



# The Birth

of mankynde, other  
wyse named the wo-  
mans booke.

Newly set forth, corrected, and  
augmented. whose con-  
tentes ye may reade in  
the Table of the  
booke, and  
most  
plainely in the  
prologue.

By Thomas Raynalde  
Physicion.



I be it some Arguar,  
thus may perhappes  
synde some lacke of  
faythfulnes and dili-  
gence in this worke :  
yet there is none so  
froward to deny, but  
that there is some  
fruite and profyte to  
be found thetein, see-  
yng that it commeth  
nowe abroade muche

more enlarged and encreased, and more dili-  
gently corrected then it was before eyther in the  
Latine or in the Englyshe. And where before in  
the other printes, there lacked matter necessarie  
to the opening and declaration of the fygures  
parteyning to the inner partes: it is nowe so  
playnely set soorth, that the simplest Wydwyfe  
which can reade, may both vnderstande for her  
better instruction, & also other women that haue  
neede of her helpe, the more commoditie. Where-  
fore my desyre is, that it may be receyued

and practised of Wydwyues and all other  
matrones, with no lesse successe then

it is with good wyll and

desyre wyrtten to

profite,

and to doo good

to other.



The Table of this present Booke.



With a Prologue  
to the women  
readers.

In this. i. Cha-  
piter is briefly  
declared the co-  
ntentes of the  
first Booke.

Capit. i.

In how many  
coates the bo-  
dy is lapped or  
involued.

Cap. ii.

Here is declared what the Rushles be. Cap. iii.

fol. iiii.

Of the Bell, called Peritoneum. Cap. iiii.

fol. v.

The declaration of the names and nature of  
the Matrix. Cap. v.

fol. vi.

Of the wombe & his partes. Cap. vi.

fol. vii.

Of the Mother port. Cap. vii.

fol. x.

Of the vessels of seede, called the stones, with  
other thereto appertayning. Cap. viii.

Cap. viii.

fol. xi.

Of the seede bryngers. Cap. ix.

eodem.

Of the office and vse of these seede bryngers.

Cap. x.

fol. xiiii.

Of the way by the which the seede is sent from  
the stones, to the angles or corniers of the ma-  
trix. Cap. xi.

fol. xix.

Here is declared the situation of the bladder in  
women. Cap. xii.

fol. xxi.

A. ii.

Of

## THE TABLE.

Of the baynes which resort to the Matrix, and the partes thereof. Item, of the Termes and the course, with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii. fol. xxiij.

Of the three calles or wrappers wherein the infant is lapped. Cap. xiiii. fol. xxix.

Which of the three Matrix baynes conteyne the Termes, and how the milke commeth to the womans breastes. Cap. xv. fol. xxx.

The declaration by letters of the figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye euery part in woman mentioned in this booke before.

Of the fyrst figure. fol. xlii.

Of the seconde figure. fol. xlv.

Of the thyrde figure. fol. xlvij.

The fourth figure. fol. xlvij.

The fyfth figure. fol. xlix.

The syxth figure. eodem.

The vii. viii. and. ix. figures. fol. l.

## The Table of the seconde Booke.



Of the tyme of byrth, and which is called naturall or vnnaturall. Cap. i. fol. li.

Of easy and breasy, difficult, or dolorous deliuerance, & the causes of it, with the signes how to know and foresee the

same. Cap. ii. fol. liii.

How a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue hard

## THE LABOIR.

hard labour. Cap. iiii. fol. lxxi.  
 Remedies and medicines by the which the labour may be made tollerable, easie, and without great payne. Cap. iiii. fol. lxxii.  
 How the secondine or seconde byrth shalbe forced to issue forth, yf it come not freely of his owne kynde. Cap. v. fol. lxxi.  
 How many thynges chaunce to the women after theyr labour, and how to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the same. Cap. vi. fol. lxxiii.  
 Of aborcementes or vntimely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen, & eased. Cap. vii. fol. lxxiii.  
 Of dead byrthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix. fol. xc.  
 In the last Chapter of this booke he briefly resited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the chiefe purpose intended in this present booke. Cap. x. fol. xcvi.

## The thyrde Booke.



In this fyrst Chapter of this thirde booke is fyrst declared the matters therein contained, & then how the infant newly borne must be handled, nourished, and looked to. Cap. i. folio. xcviij.  
 A. iiii. Of

## The Table.

Of the Nurse and her mylke, and how long the chylde should sucke. Cap. ii.	f. fol. C.
Of diuers diseases & infirmities which chaunce to chyl dren lately borne, and the remedies therefore. Cap. iii.	f. fol. Ciii.
Of the fire and ouermuch loosenes of the belly. Cap. iiii.	f. fol. Ciiii.
To vni loose the chylde, beyng bounde.	f. fol. Cv.
Remedie for the Cough and distillation oꝝ ra- tarhes of the head.	f. fol. Cvi.
Remedie for short wynde.	f. fol. Cvii.
Against wheales oꝝ bladders on the tong. eodem.	
Of exulceration oꝝ clefture, chapping oꝝ ch- nyng of the mouth.	f. fol. Cviii.
Of apostumation and runnyng of the eares. f. fol.	eodem.
Of apostumation in the head.	f. fol. Cix.
Of the swelling oꝝ bolming of the eyes.	eodem.
Of the scumme oꝝ whyte of the eye.	eodem.
Against immoderate heate of the feuer.	eodem.
Against frettyng oꝝ gnawynge in the belly. f. fol. Cr.	
Agaynst swelling of the body.	eodem.
Agaynst often sneesynge.	eodem.
Of welkes in the body, and the cure.	f. fol. Cxi.
Agaynst swelling of the Coddes.	eodem.
Agaynst swelling of the Paui ll.	eodem.
Agaynst vnsleepynesse.	f. fol. Cxii.
Agaynst yeryng oꝝ the hychate.	eodem.
Agaynst often parbreakynge by weakenesse and feeblesse of the stomache.	f. fol. Cxiii.
Against fearefull & terrible dreames.	f. fol. Cxiui.
Agaynst	

## The Table.

Agaynst issuyng forth of the fundement gutte.  
folio. eodem.

Agaynst Tenasus. eodem.

Agaynst doozmes in the belly. eodem.

Of chafyng or gallyng of any place of the body.  
fol. Crvi.

Of the fallying sicknesse. eodem.

Consumption or pynnyng away of the body.  
fol. Crvii.

Of lassitude, wearynesse, or heauynesse of the  
chyldeg body. eodem.

Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne mem-  
bers of the body, called the pallie. fol. Crviii.

Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stoppyng  
of the brine. eodem.

Of gogle eyes, or looking a squint. fol. Crx.

## The fourth booke.



Cap. iii.

If suche thynges the  
which shalbe entrea-  
ted of in this fourth  
booke. Cap. i. fol. cxi.  
Of conceptio, & how  
many wayes it may  
be hindred or letted.  
Cap. ii. fol. eodem.  
Howe many wayes  
conception may be  
letted, & how the cau-  
ses may be knowen.

fol. Crxi.

How

- How to knowe whether lache of conception be  
of the woman or of the man, and how it may  
be perceined whether she be conceaued or no.  
Cap. liii. fol. Cxiii.
- Of certayne remedies and medicines whiche  
may further the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.  
fol. Cxiii.
- Of diuers bestringing receiptes. fol. Cxvi.
- Of the causes and remedies for dandruffe of the  
head. fol. Cxvii.
- To take away heere from places where it is un-  
seemely. fol. Cxviii.
- To daway freckens or other spotted in the face.  
fol. Cxix.
- To destroy wartes and suche lyke excrescens on  
the face, or els where. eodem.
- To cleare and claryfie the skinne in the handes,  
face, or other part of the body. fol. eodem.
- To soule and molifie the ruggednesse of the  
skinne. fol. Cxx.
- Agaynst todayne rysynges of pynples through  
vnhind heate in the face, or els where. eodem.
- To keepe and preserue the teeth cleane. eodem.
- Of stinkyng breath. fol. eodem.
- Of the ranke sauour of the armeholes. eodem.

¶ Here endeth the Table.



## A Prologue to the women readers.



Here in the beginning  
of this presente Pro-  
logue, I wil shew the  
example of them, whi-  
che when they bid any  
ghestes to dynner or  
supper, are wont fyrst  
to declare what shall  
be their cheare, what  
fare, & how many dy-  
shes they shall haue,  
praying the to take it in good woorth, & to looke  
for neither better ne worse then hath been men-  
tioned of: And euen so here wyll I doo. Before  
that ye enter into the readyng of this little trea-  
tise, I shall succinctly & in few wordes resite the  
summe & cheefe contentes of the same, with the  
vtilitie and profite which may ensue to the dili-  
gent and attentife ouerreader thereof, to the end  
that ye of these thynges beyng fyrst wel aduertis-  
ed, may haue the more or lesse courage to em-  
ploy your labour in ouersyng and perusing of  
the same. For commonly it doth occasionate any  
man to be the more prompt, redy, and wylling  
to take payne, when he is assured or certified of  
the profite, purpose, and fruite therof comming:  
and lyke wyse it is a great prycke or allurement,  
entysing and mouing a man to reade any booke,  
when he is somewhat fyrst admonished of the  
matters comprehended and contayned therein.

The entent of  
the Auctour.

Wherefore nowe to come to our purpose, ye

B. i.

shall

## The Prologue.

The more part  
of this booke  
translated into  
English three  
or foure yeeres  
past.

The name of  
this booke.

shal vnderstand that about thre or foure yeeres past, a certayne studious and diligent clarke, at the request and desyre of diuers honest and sadde matrones, beyng of his acquayntaunce, dyd translate out of Latine into English a great part of this booke, entitulyng it accordyng to the Latine inscription De partu hominis, that is to say, Of the byrth of Mankinde: which we now doo name, The Womans booke, for so much as the most part, or well neare all therein entreated of, dooth concerne and touch onely Women. In which his translation he barred or declined nothyng at all from the steppes of his Latine aucthour, obseruyng more fidelytie in translatyng, then choyse or discretion at that time in admittynge and allowyng many thinges in the same booke, greatly needyng admonition and wary aduise or counsel to the readers, which otherwise might sometimes vse that for a helpe, the which should turne to a hinderance. Wherefore I reuoluyng and earnestly reuysyng from top to toe the sayd booke, and here withall considering the manyfolde vtilitie and profite which thereby mought ensue to all women (as touching that purpose) yf it were more narrowly looked ouer, and with a straighter iudgement more exactly euery thyng therein pondred and tryed, thought my labour and paynes shoulde not be euyl employed, ne vnthankefully accepted and receyued of all honest, discrete, and sage women, yf I after good and diligent perusyng thereof, dyd correct and amende such faultes in it,

## The Prologue.

it, as seemed worthy of the same, and to aduise the readers what thynges were good, or intollerable to be vsed, which were dangerous, and which were utterly to be excluded. The which thyng I haue not onely so done, but ouer this, haue thereunto adioyned and annexed dyuers other more experimented & more famillier medicines. And farther haue in the fyrst booke set forth, and evidently declared, all the inwarde partes of women (such as were necessary to be knowen to our purpose) and that not onely in wordes, but also in liuely and expresse fygures, by the which euery part before in the booke described, may in maner be as exactly and clearely perceiued, as though ye were present at the cutting open of Anathomie of a dead woman.

And thinke not the vtilitie and profite of this fyrst booke, and knowledge thereof to be litle or of small value, but take it as the foundation and ground, by the perceiuerance wherof, your wittes and vnderstandyng shalbe illuminate and lyghtened, the better to vnderstande, howe euery thyng commeth to passe within your bodies in tyme of conception, of bearyng, and of byrth. And further, by the perfect knowledge of this booke, ye shall clearely perceiue the reason of many diseases which happen peculiarly to women, and the causes thereof, by which perceiuerance, agayne ye shall haue the redy vnderstanding how to withstande and remedy the sayd infirmities or diseases. For note ye wel, that as there is no man, whatsoever he be, that

Many thynges annexed & newe added to this booke.

The contentes of the fyrst booke.

How profitable the fyrst booke is.

The vtilitie of a perfect knowledge of Anathomie.

B.ii.

shall

## The Prologue.

shall become an absolute and perfect Physitian, vnlesse he haue an absolute and perfect knowledge of all the inwardes & outwardes of mans & womans body: euen so shall ye neuer groundlye vnderstande the matters conteyned in the seconde booke, or any other communication, or wytyng, touchyng the same intent, except ye first haue true and iust cognoissauce in the first booke. Agayne, when that a woman cometh to a Physitian for counsell, concerning somethyng that may be amisse in the part: the aunswere of the Physitian, and reasonable allegation of causes to the same infirmitie, is many tymes obscure, darke, and strange, to be comprehended by the woman, for lacke of due knowledge of the situation, maner, & fashion of the inwardes. And truly when a person is sicke or diseased in any part, it is halfe a comfort, yea halfe his health to vnderstand in what part the disease is, and how that part lyeth in the body. This knowledge also ministreth yet a farther engin and policie, to inuent infinitely the better how the medicine should be applyed, & after the most profitable sort ministred & set to the diseased plot. To be short, all the witnes and artificial craftie inuention, and diuers maners of ministrations in the noble science of Physicke, proceedeth & springeth of the profound knowledge of Anathomie. Therefore mine aduise & bitter counsel is, that al womē in whose handes this litle booke shall chaunce to come, with all diligence do force them selues perfectly to the vnderstanding of this first booke:  
well

The counsaile  
of the aucthour  
to the readers.

## The Prologue.

well assuring them that they shall not repent them of theyr small paynes bestowed in that behalfe. And to the ende that euery thing myght be the playner and more easie to attaine vnto, I haue at the latter end of the foresayd fyrr booke, set the figures which represent such matters as were entreated of in the booke before, and also haue therto annexed a sufficient declaration and exposition by letters, of all partes and parcelles conteyned in the sayde figures.

In the seconde booke we shall declare the diuers sortes and maners of the deliuerance or byrth of mankynde, and all the daungers, perils, & other cases happening to the labouring woman at that season, with remedies and manyfolde medicines concerning the same, where also we haue not omitted ne left out anye medicine beyng fyrr in the olde booke, but haue in many places rectified and amended the same, accordyng to reason and the lawes of physicke, and besydes this, haue added thereto diuers other salutarie and effectuell medicines, suche as either I my selfe, or other physicians, being yet alviue at this day, haue experimented and practised. Furthermore, in this second booke ye may fynde diuers remedies whereby to prouoke the termes or flowes (when that needeth) or to restraine or stopp same whē they issue more largely then nature dooth requyre, with many other matters, to long here to be rehearsed.

In the thyrde booke shalbe entreated, of the election and choyle, by certayne signes and co-

The contents of the seconde booke.

Many truly experimented medicines added to this booke.

Things entreated of in the thirde booke.

## The Prologue

hens of a good Nurse, whiche may foster and bryng by the chyld beying borne: Item medicines encreasynge, dimynyshynge, attenuatynge, engrossynge, and amendynge the mylke in the Nurses brestes. Also remedies for many and sundrye diseases, whiche oft times chaunce vnto infantes after their byrth.

What is  
concerned in  
the fourth  
booke.

In the fourth and last booke, we wyll some-  
what commune of conception, with the causes  
hynderynge or fartherynge the same, shewynge  
certayne counsaile and remedies whereby (by  
the grace of **GOD**) the vnfruitful may be made  
more fruitefull, and impedimentes of concep-  
tion, by vertue of medicines, remoued and ouer-  
come, the woman beying made the more apt to  
concepe. And farther in this last booke shall  
be vttered and sette forth certayne embellish-  
ynge receyptes, concerning only honest & health-  
some decozation and clenlynesse, alwayes moste  
lowable and commendable in a woman, as to  
scoure and clense the head, to cause the heere to  
keepe his naturall colour, to preserue the heere  
from falling away, to take away heere from  
certayne places, where beying, it causeth some  
deformitie or vnseemelynesse in a person, to  
subtyle and cleare the skynne in the face or o-  
ther where, to remoue and to doo away spottes,  
freckens, and other suche lyke displeasaunte  
markes and tokens, to supple and molifye the  
skynne beying rugged and rough: with other  
moesuche lyke matters, to long here to be re-  
hearsed, the whiche truely are not of anye pri-  
dent



## The Prologue.

dent person to be relected, imprinted, or display-  
 sed, forasmuche as I teache nothyng in that  
 place, but that only whiche may make to the ho-  
 nest, comely, and commendable concerning and  
 maynteynyng of the inset and naturall beautie  
 in a woman, utterly abhorryng and desyring all  
 fardynge, paintyng, and counterfait cast colours,  
 whiche of some damnable and misproude peo-  
 ple be dayly used, suche as by all meanes possi-  
 ple seeke and searche more the abhominable and  
 deuillish painting a garish setting forth of their  
 mortal carcases (the better thereby to commend  
 it vnto the eyes of foolish & fonder men) then by  
 honest, sober, debonayre, & gentyll maners, so to  
 demeane their lyfe, that they may therby rather  
 obteyne the loue, amitie, and hartie perpetuall  
 fauour, fyrst of God, & then of all honest, discrete  
 and godly wyse men. Thus nowe to be short, I  
 haue in as compendious maner as the matter  
 woulde suffer, set before your eyes the cheefe and  
 principal contentes comprehended in this lytle  
 volume. And now remaineth there nothyng els  
 but only to require the beneuolent fauour and  
 good acceptation of this my labour and paynes  
 spent in the compyllyng of these forsayde mat-  
 ters, prayyng, that as it hath ben to me payne-  
 ful in the composyng thereof, so it may be both  
 pleasant and fruitefull to al women (for whose  
 sake & only respect it is set forth) in the readyng  
 thereof. Howbeit, I am not ignorant ne vnsure  
 that manye there are, before whose syght this  
 booke shall fynde small grace, and lesse fauour.

Against  
 painting of  
 womens  
 faces.

The bene-  
 uolencie of  
 the reader  
 required.

## The Prologue.

Haue to please  
many iudg-  
mentes.

The maner  
of Poets in  
tymes past.

The difficultie  
to conuince the  
good will of  
prouer people.

So harde a thing it is to wytte or endite any  
matter whatsoeuer it be, that shoulde be able to  
sustayne and abyde the variable iudgement, and  
to obteyne or winne the constant loue and a-  
lowaunce of euerye man, especiall ye if it con-  
teyne in it any noueltie or brywont strangenes.  
Wherefore the auncient Poetes in tymes pasted,  
when that they enterprysed any new or strange  
workes, were wont in the fruite of the same,  
with greate protestation, to imocate and call  
vpon all the goddes and goddes by name, re-  
quyring them fauourably to aspyre, ayde, and  
prosper their attempted purpose, to the ende  
that by their obteyned fauour, it myght be the  
more acceptable and gracious to all suche as  
shoulde it beholde and reade, whose example  
ryght necessary and needefull it were that I here  
shoulde deuoutly ensue and folowe, so that I  
coule fyrst beleue that by suche maner of imo-  
cation, myght be allured and wonne the bene-  
uolencie and wyllyng fauour of all suche in  
whose handes this present booke shoulde happen  
to fall. But truly I do suppose, that although  
I shoulde call downe all the nine noble Muses  
out of the famous mount of Hellicon, or praye  
to be assistent the three louyng graces, or great  
Apollo god, maister, and cheefe inuentour of  
the nature of all hearbes and other medicines,  
or Esculapius cheefe patrone and president in  
the worthy science of Physicke, or wittie Mer-  
curie with his doullie and sugred eloquencie,  
with sweete Suada, goddesse of all perswasion,  
with

## The Prologue.

with all other the goddes and goddesse what  
euer they bee, in whom ingenious Poetes do  
saigne to be a maiestie, myght, and power, to  
enclayne the hartes of men for to delyte and take  
pleasure in any suche thyng which fyrst shalbe  
by their godhead alowed and fauoured: though  
(I say) all these shoulde firmly conspyre in one  
together, and bende them vtterly to the most of  
theyr hygh puissaunce, to sacre, halowe, yea and  
with their holpe poetical sprite to breathe ouer  
this booke, yet shoulde there be founde people  
of so ingrate, straunge, peruers, and waywarde  
wittes, that woulde (without all good reason)  
blame and improue the same, bunneth yet seene,  
and muche lesse read. for who be they that geue  
so precipitat and headdy iudgementes in al ma-  
ner of matters, as suche (for the more parte) the  
whiche therein shall haue leaste cognoissaunce  
or knowledg, and take least payne in readyng  
or searchyng the veritie of that thyng agaynst  
the whiche they be moste stoute, doughtie, and  
bolde pronouncers. And this do I not say on-  
ly of them, that peraduenture shall here and  
there in the procelle of this booke fynde any  
perticuler matters to reprove and carpe, some-  
tymes worthylly, and sometymes otherwysely:  
but also, yea, and that muche more, of them  
whiche generally without all exception, shall  
condemne and vtterly reprove all the whole  
matter: some alleagynge that it is shame, and  
other some, that it is not meete ne sytting  
suche

The syght  
iudgementes of  
many men.

Of them that vt-  
terly do condemne  
this booke.

## The Prologue.

Answer to  
certaine ca-  
uillations.

Nothing so  
good but it  
may be a  
bulwar.

such matters to be entreated of, so playnely in our mother and bulgar language, to the dishonour (as they say) of womanhead, and the derision of they? wont secretes; by the detection and discoueryng whereof, men it readyng or hearyng, shalbe moued thereby the more to abhorre and lothe the companye of women, and further, in they? communications to iesse, and bourde of womens priuities, not woont to be knowne of them, with diuers other suche lyke cauillations and reasons: so that they? opinion it is, that it were more expedient and better to suppressle and utterly to condemne vnto darknesse for euer this booke, then to sende it forth into lyght. Loe, suche is the light iudgemente of them, the which in euery thyng, whereof may ensue both good and euyl, haue alwayes they? eyes walkyng, and firmly assyred and directed vppon the euyl, pychyng and choosyng out the woozst of euery matter, omittynge and leauyng to speake of the beste, as the thyng whiche were nothyng to they? purpose. If euery thyng in this worlde shoulde be wayed and passed vppon after this sort, then shoulde we be fayne to condemne and bannythe those thynges farre from vs, whiche are at this tyme accompted and taken for the most necessary, woozthy, and of greatest price or estimation. For to be short, there is nothyng vnder heauen so good, but that it may be peruerted and turned to an euyl vse, by them that be euyl and naught them selues, and

## The Prologue.

and doo abuse it: ne is there any thyng so absolute and perfecte, but by the occasion of the abuse thereof, at one tyme or other, may and doth ensue great daunger and damage to mankynd. Fyre and water be two right necessarie elementes to the vse of man, without the whiche we coulde not lyue: yet by the meanes of them, many a miserable deed hath been done, and perpetrated. By fyre hath been consumed and deuoured whole Cities and Countreyes. By water, swallowed and drowned infinite men, shippes, yea and whole regions. Agayne, meate and drinke, to the moderate vlers thereof, dooth minister and mainteyne lyfe: And contrary, to the vnrmeasurable and vnsatiat gourmaundes and gluttons, it hath full many thousand times brought surfettes, sychenesse, and at the laste death. By weapons, Realmes and Cities be defended from the iniurie and violencie of theyr fierce enemies, the true wayfaryng man, from the assault of the theefe: Yea and many tymes cleane contrary, by weapons, Realme, and Cities be subuerted and vtterly destroyed, the true mans throate by the theefe cut. The moste holye and sacred Wyble teacheth nothyng but holynesse and vertuous lyuyng, charitie to God and to our neyghbour, reformation of our wicked lyuyng, and breefelye, the hygh waye to God. The blessed Sacramēt of the body & blood of Christe Iesus was instituted and ordeined by our Sauour him selfe, for apynicipail earnest, lyuely, and moste present consolation and comforte

Fyre & water abused.

Meate and drinke abused.

Weapons abused.

The Bible abused.

The blessed Sacrament may be abused.

## The Prologue.

and comfort of mans consience, yet both holye Scripture, and also the foresayde holy Sacrament, haue been, be, and will be, the confusion, and condemnation of a great number of the abusers and indigne or vnworthy receyuers of them both. Should men, for the auoyding all these foresayde inconueniencies; and for the reasons abouesayde, condemne and banyshe fyre and water, forsake theyr meate and drynke, suppress and forbyd all manner of weapon, abolysh and set asyde the holy Scripture, deny or vnregarde the blessed Sacrament? No, it were but madnesse once to thynk it. Therefore I say, the iudgement of that eye can neuer be equall & indifferent, whiche hath more respecte and regarde alwayes to the displeasures and hurtes possible to happen (onely through the misuse of a thyng) then to the enuolumentes and profites dayly and commonly lyke to ensue to the well blers of the same: that, that of it selfe is good, is neuer to be disallowed for þe sake of them that do abuse it. For as the Apostle also dooth testifye, To them that be good them selfe, every thyng turneth to good: what euer it be, is to them a sufficient matter and occasyon therin to seeke the glorie of GOD, and the only profite of their ewer Chrysten. And contrary, suche as be of yll disposition, in euery thyng (be it neuer so good and salutarie) piketh out matter of mainteynauce to theyr lewdnesse, turnyng matters of sadnesse and discretion, to foolyshe and pyuith prating contention.

wherefore

Whose  
iudgements can  
neuer be in-  
different.

To the good  
every thyng  
turneth to  
good.

The condi-  
tion of such  
as be yll.



## The Prologue.

wherefore considering that there is nothing in this worlde so necessary, ne so good, holy, or vertuous, but that it may by wickednesse be abused, it shall be no great wonder, though this little booke also, made, written, and set forth for a good purpose, yet by lyght and lewde persons be bled contrary to godlynesse, honestie, or content of the wyter thereof. The abusion of this booke (in my simple iudgement) consisteth one, lye in these two poyntes. The one is, least that some yll disposed person shoulde wickedly abuse suche medicines as be here declared for a good purpose, to some deuyllish and lewde vse. What I meane by the lewde vse of them, they that haue vnderstandyng, right soone wyll perceiue. The second poynt is, least that this booke hap-  
penyng into any fyght merchauntes handes, shoulde minister matters vnto suche, to deuyse of these thynges at vnset and vnseemely tymes, to the derision or ashamyng of suche women as should be in presence. &c. To these reasons can I make no better aunswere, then hath ben alleaged before. Notwithstandyng, yet I say that I trust, yea, and do not doubt, but that this booke shall be so discretely diuided abroad, that none of them shall fall in any such persons handlyng.

Wherein this booke may be abused.

The seconde poynt.

No lyght persons shal haue any of these bookes.

Agayne, yf any doo chaunce to them, I am sure they wyll as soone reade this Prologue, as the rest of this booke, the which thing when they shall doo, here shall they heare of me, that they be in theyr doynge neyther honest, good, ne godly, but speakyng vnreuerently, contemptuously,

## The Prologue.

Of foolyshe and  
lewde talkers.

Some woulde  
that neyther ho-  
nest ne vnhonest  
shoulde haue this  
booke.

trouously and vntymely of such thinges, they do  
great iniury, dishonour, and contumely to na-  
ture: for he that declareth any thyng in man  
or woman, priuie or apart, talkyng and rehear-  
sing it in reproche, derision, or confusion of his  
euen Chylden, can not be excused of mortall  
and deadly sinne, for so muche as contumely-  
ously he ashameth and confoundeth his euen  
Chyssen, wherewith he byrgeth hym out of  
paciencie, mouyng hym to yre, and vengeaunce,  
in rehearasyng of such thynges, and after such  
sort, as he knoweth shoulde agreeue and bere  
his mynde. Wherefore for such deedes, he shall  
not be accounted of the number of honest and  
sage persons, but of the lyght and lewde. Yet  
another sort is there, which woulde that nei-  
ther honest ne vnhonest men shoulde see this  
booke, for because (as they say) be a man neuer  
so honest, yet by reading here of thinges to them  
before vnknoyen, they shall conceaue a cer-  
tayne lothsomnes and abhorryng towarde a  
woman. To these I aunswere, that I knowe  
nothyng in woman so priuie ne so secrete, that  
they shoulde neede to care who knowe of it, nei-  
ther is there any part in woman more to be ab-  
horred, then in man. And if the knowledge of  
such thynges which commonly be called the  
womans priuities, shoulde dimynysh the hartie  
loue and estimation of a woman in the mynde  
of man, then by this reason, Phisitians and  
Chyrurgians wiues should greatly be abhorred  
and misbeloued of theyr husbandes. And I  
my

## The Prologue.

my selfe lyke wyse, whiche wryteth this booke,  
shoulde marueylously aboue many other ab-  
horre or loth women. But to be short, there is  
no such thyng, neyther any cause thereto why.  
Wherefore all such slender reasons set apart, let  
no woman be greued who shall see or beholde  
this booke: for yf the partie be lewde, vnhappy,  
and knauyshe that shall reade it, here I am sure  
he shal learne neither lewdenesse, vnhappinesse,  
ne knauerie. Howbeit, generally to all men, in  
whose handes this booke shal chaunce to come,  
I counsell and exhort, that they take not vpon  
them to talke of any thinges therein conteyned,  
but onely where it may edifie, and be assuredly  
well accepted.

No matter who  
readeth this  
booke.

The exhortati-  
on to all readers.

For women lyghtly wyl not gladly heare of  
such matters, by any man, vnlesse it be a Phi-  
sition of whom they require counsaile, or of  
theyr discrete husbandes. It shal be no dis-  
pleasure to any honest and louyng woman,  
that her husbände shoulde reade such thynges:  
for many men there be of so gentle and louyng  
nature towarde theyr wyues, that they wyl be  
more dyligent and carefull to reade or seeke  
out any thyng that shoulde doo theyr wyues  
good, beyng in that case, then the women them-  
selues. Briefly, I require all readers hereof, to  
interpretate and construe euery thyng herein  
conteyned, accordyng to the best, and to vse  
euery thyng herein entreated of to the pur-  
pose wherefore it was wrytten. For truly as  
for

## The Prologue.

The considera-  
tion why this  
booke was set  
foorth.

This booke set  
foorth in many  
other languages.  
yes.

for my part considering the manyfolde, dayly,  
and imminent dangers and perylles the which  
all maner of women, of what estate or degree so  
euer they be, in theyr labours do sustayne and  
abyde, yea, many tymes with peryll of theyr lyfe  
(of the which there be to many examples, neede-  
lesse here to be rehearsed) I thought it shoulde  
be a very charitable and laudable deede, and  
ryght thankesfully to be accepted of all honou-  
rable and other honest matrons, yf by my  
paynes this little treatise were made to speake  
Englyshe, as it hath been long syth taught to  
speake Dutche, frenche, Spanyshe, and dyuers  
other languages. In the whiche Countreies  
there be fewe women that can reade, but they  
wyl haue one of these bookes alwayes in rea-  
dines, where also this and other such bookes be  
as commonly sold at euery Stationers shoppe,  
as any other booke. The same commoditie then  
and profite which they in their regions do ob-  
teyne by enioying of this lyttle booke in theyr  
maternall language, may also ensue vnto all  
women in this noble Realme of Englande, it  
being lyke wyse sette foorth in our Englyshe  
speeche, so that to them which diligently wyl  
aduert and geue heede to the instructions of  
this lyttle booke, it may supply the roome and  
place of a good Mydwyfe, and aduise them ma-  
ny tymes of sundry causes, chaunces, and reme-  
dies, wherein peradventure ryght wyse wo-  
men and good Mydwyues shalbe full ignorant.  
And

## The Prologue.

And truly (as I haue been credibly enuourued by diuers persons worthy to be beleued) there be both the first setting forth of this booke, right many honourable Ladies, & other worthypfull Gentlewomen, which haue not disdained the oftener by the occasion of this booke, to frequent and haunt women in theyr labours, carrying with them this booke in theyr handes, and causyng such part of it as doth chiefly concerne the same purpose, to be read before the Mydwyfe, and the rest of the women then being present, whereby oft tynes, then all haue ben put in remembrance of that, where with the labouryng woman hath been greatly comforted, and alleuiated of her thronges and trauaile: whose laudable example and dooynge, woulde GOD that many proude Mydwyfes woulde ensue and folowe, among the which, as there be many ryght expert, diligent, wise, circumspect and tender about such busynesse as appertayneth to theyr office: So be there a gayne many mo full indiscreete, vnreasonable, cholerish, and farr to seeke in such thynges, the which shoulde chiefly helpe and succour the women in theyr most paynesfull labour and thronges, through whose rudenesse and rashnesse onely. I doubt not but that a great number of women in their labour speeke worse then needed otherwyse. But here now let not the good Mydwyfes be offended with that, that is spoken of the badde. for verily there is no science, but that it hath his Apes, Dyles, Beares,

Both Ladies  
and Gentlewo-  
men haue vied  
this booke.

Of Mydwyfes

In every sci-  
ence there be  
of all sort.

15511

C.i.

and

# The Prologue.

and Iles, which as aboue all other haue most  
 needs of information and teaching, so most vni-  
 uersally agayne, more then any other, wyl they  
 hyke and wynce agaynst such as woulde them  
 retourne or reduce to any better way then they  
 haue ben accustomed to in tymes past. And this  
 do I say, for because that at the fyrst commyn-  
 abroad of this present booke, many of this sort  
 of wydes, moued epyther of enuie, or els of  
 mallice, or both, diligented and endeouored  
 them very earnestly, by all wayes possible, to  
 fynde the meanes to suppress and abrogate the  
 same, making all women of theyr acquaint-  
 taunce (whom they thought to haue any know-  
 ledge thereof) to beleue that it was nothing  
 worth, and that it shoulde be a flaunel to wo-  
 men, forsomuche as therein was deforted and  
 set forth the secretes and priuities of women,  
 and that euery boy and knaue hadde of these  
 bookes, reading them as openly as the tales of  
 Robin hood, &c. The which sayinges, as they  
 were false, and vntrue, and malicious allegati-  
 ons of euill harted persons, to whom it  
 was great grieve, that any by reading thereof,  
 shoulde see or vnderstande more then they had  
 knowledge of before: So is it very sooth and  
 true, that right diuers of the better and more  
 sober sort, were there of full fayne and glad, and  
 verie desirous to haue of them; and gaue  
 faythfull counsaile also vnto women of theyr  
 familiar knowledge, to heare the booke read by  
 some othe, or els (suche as coule) to reade it  
 them

Some wy-  
 des woulde  
 haue had this  
 booke forbydden.

The false say-  
 nges of the  
 maleuolent.

The good  
 wydes  
 were glad of  
 this booke.



## The Prologue.

them selues. whose honest and vertuous industry in that behalfe, as it doth merite and deserue the laude and prayse of all them that be laudable them selfe: euen so is the fylthy and hyle ingratitude and dispiteuous enuie of the maleuolent, to be detested and utterly abhorred of all people: whose malignaunt wittes, yf they myght preuaile of theyr purpose, woulde they the good courages of all honest interpreters, in those matters and all other. And

Envy and unthankfulness to be abhorred.

thus I conclude and make an ende

of this rude prologue, requir-

ing the gentle readers

therof, that yf they

shall fynde any

thing ther

in inter-

pretable to diuers senses, to ac-

cept onely that which may

make to the best, accord-

ing to my mea-

nyng.

C. ii.

## The first booke.

**I**n this first Chapter is briefly  
declared the contentes of the  
first booke.



The title of  
the first booke

Although that many things  
entreated of in this  
first booke, shal seeme unto  
some not very necessary to  
the vnderstanding of the  
seconde booke, yet then contrary do I  
ensure and certifie (as I haue suffici-  
ently sayd in the Prologue) that the ig-  
norant in the first, shalbe full blynde  
in the seconde, to the which the first is  
as a key, opening and clearing the mat-  
ters to be intreated of in the seconde.

The contentes  
of this booke.

In this first booke then shalbe de-  
clared the fourme, maner, and situation of  
the inwarde partes of a woman, suche  
as are in them by nature dedicate and  
assigned to the propagation, concep-  
tion, and bearyng of mankinde. In who  
truely is the receptacle, & as ye woulde  
say, the campe or feelde of mankynde to  
be engendred therein. And although  
that

that man be as principall midouer and cause of the generation: yet (no displeasure to men) the woman doth conferre and contribute muche more, what to the encreasement of the chyld in her wombe, and what to the nourishment thereof after the byrth; then doth the man. And doubtlesse, yf a man woulde demaunde to whom the chyld oweth most his generation: We may worthily make aunswere, that to the mother, whether ye regarde the paynes in bearyng, other els the conference of most matter in begetting.

The woman  
conferreth more  
the generation  
then man.

Furthermore, in this booke ye shall reade certayne thyngs, which in times passed haue ben corruptly, negligently, yea and very falsely wrytten of, and of the which both men, yea and women them selues, haue conceiued very erroneous and misopinions, as ye shall farther perceiue in the proesse.

Many thynges  
falsely wrytten  
in times past.

Now therefore that we come to the declaration of the Organs generatiue in womā, it shalbe necessary to the bet-

C.iii.

ter

## The first booke.

ter vnderstanding therof, fyrst to shew  
the description of certayne thynges,  
Without whose knowledge, this trea-  
tise would be many times the more ob-  
scure and darke.

**I**n howe many coates the body is  
lapped or inuolued. Cap. ii.

The principall  
coates of the  
body.



The body of man or wo-  
man is inuolued or com-  
passed vniuersally with  
three principal coates.

Of the whiche the fyrst  
and vttermoſt is called the skynne, in  
Latine Cutis, with whom generally  
euery part of the body is clad and inclo-  
sed, the which yet in some part is more  
softe, delycate, and thynne, then in some  
other, and in some one person more  
stowre and styffe, then in some other a-  
gayne, for causes needelesse here to be  
rehearsed.

The superficial  
skynne.

And ye shall note, that vpon the out-  
warde face and superficie of this skyn,  
there is yet another thinner skynne, in  
Latine

Latine commonly named Cuticula, & of  
 some Efflorescentia cutis. This thyn sayn  
 is it, the which ye see rise lyke a bladder  
 when any part of the body is blistered  
 with fire or hot water, so that betwene  
 this thynne skin and the very skinne, is  
 contained the water which resorteth to  
 the place by the violence of the fyre or  
 heate, the which thin skin also we vse to  
 pricke to let the water issue forth: also  
 the same that skaleth or pylleth of the  
 hands or other parts of the body being  
 scabbed & begynnyng to dry. Item, the  
 skin that the Adders do cast in the som-  
 mer tyme, is the foresayd thin superfici-  
 all skin, & not the very substantiall skin  
 of the body in deede. For the very skin  
 neuer pylleth ne falleth of but by great  
 violence, as by slaying, like as beastes be  
 flaine at the butchers, & as they slay co-  
 nies. And againe the thin or superficial  
 skin, scale it or fal it of neuer so often, yet  
 in the place of it is reingendred new, as  
 good alwayes as the former. But yf  
 the second and very skin be perished, by  
 C. iij. cutting

The very skin  
 skaleth not of.

## The first booke.

The very skyn  
perished is ne-  
uer restored.

cutting or apostumation, or by other  
casualtie, it wyl neuer be restored to his  
olde perfection agayne, but shall he we  
allwayes in the place where it is, as it  
were a seame, skarre, or marke, smoth,  
and harder then the other skynne, and  
without naturall powres.

The seconde  
course.

The fleshy skin.

The seconde inuestiture or clothyng  
of the body, is named the fleshy skyn, in  
Latin *Membrana carnosa*, so called, for be-  
cause that it conteyneth and is compas-  
sed of fleshynges, then any other kyll or  
skyn in all the body, & is as it were the  
lynnyng to the fore sayd *Cutis*, that is, the  
very skyn immediatly aboue hym, the  
very skin and it being both basted toge-  
ther, by a great number of smal fybres  
or cords enterlacing these two skynnes,  
so that with great payne vnneth may  
they be separated the one frō the other.  
And farther, betweene these two skins  
runne a great number of baynes, ar-  
tires, and sinewes, in euery part of the  
body, so that the great baynes whiche  
appeare so manifestly to your syght in  
the

the armes, temples, handes, legges, feete, and other places, runne betweene the proper skinne and the fleshy skinne, this being to them as a bedde, and that as a couerlet.

The thyrde coate of the body, is the fatte, in Latin Adeps, the Whiche doth so generally in euery part of the body inuolue & wrap the same, as the other two coates: but yet the man or woman being in any reasonable lykyng, it is founde in euery part (except felve) as the forehead, the temples, the backes of the handes and feete, With certayne other places nedeleffe here to be resited, and doth entercurre & runne betweene the two foresayd skynnes, receyuyng & embracyng in it selfe the small bastying fibres, the baynes, artires, and sinnues, which (as I sayd before) be deriued fro the one skin to the other: And the greater foyson of fat that there is betweene the two skinnes, the lesse be the baynes intercurryng betweene them, conspicuous or sensible to the eye (thabundance  
of

The thirde  
coate, is the  
fatte.

Store of fatte  
letteth the Ayres  
of the baynes.



## The first booke.

of fat Drownyng & coueryng the great-  
nes of them) the Which also in the selfe  
same place of a leaner oz sparer person,  
shalbe seene very great, and as it were  
swollen baynes, in comparison of the  
fatter. Itē, vnderstand ye that in some  
part of the body, naturally fatnes doth  
abound much more then in other some,  
as in the belly lyghtly the fatte is two  
fyngers thicke & more: and in women  
that be meanely fat, in the thyres & but-  
tockes this fatte is of three, yea foure  
fyngers thycknes, which (as I sayd a-  
boue) alway hath his place betweene  
the foresayd two skinnēs.

Fatte in some  
part, more then  
some.

Now immediatly vnder the fleshy  
skin, be conteyned the Muscles of the  
body, so that the inner face oz superficie  
of the fleshy skin, wherewith it toucheth  
the muscles, is alwaies bedewed with  
a certayne slimy moysture, by whiche  
meanes the foresayd Muscles mouing  
and stirring vnder the sayd fleshy skin,  
be the freer, & haue the lesse impedimēt  
oz let in theyr motion, & very easie it is  
to

What is con-  
teyned next vnder  
the fleshy  
skynne.

to seperate this skin fro the Muskles.

Here is declared what the Muskles be. Cap. iiii.

**T**he muskles of mans body be called the moouing cordes and fleshye strynges whereby any member of the body is mooued to or fro, bpward or downeward, or turned rounde. As for example. If ye close, or otherwise do moue either of your handes, and in closyng or moouyng it with the other hande doo feele the Wryste of that hande, ye shall sensibly percepue as it were certayne cordes mouing vnder the skynne, the whiche be called Muskles, in latine Musculi. To discusse curiously the nature or occasyon of the name of Muskles, is not for this place. Here is it sufficient to vnderstand what is meant by the name. Yet note ye well, that wheresoeuer there is great store of Muskles, and chiefly in the myddle parte of them, there is also great plentye of fleshe, enterlardyng

What is meant  
by the name of  
Muskles.

## The first booke.

The Muskles  
entermyng led  
with a: he.

lardyng & entermynglyng it selfe with  
the Muskles, & as it were conbinding,  
colligatyng, or knittynge togeather the  
Muskles, not so yet, but that neuerthe-  
lesse they haue theyr free motion.

All other places of the body left a-  
part and vnmentioned of, here wyll I  
only declare a litle of the Muskles of  
the belly, forasmuch as theyr operation  
is sometymes conferent and appertay-  
ning to the matters that we entend of.

The Muskles  
of the belly.

Ouer the amplitude of the belly,  
next vnder the fleshy kel or skin, be. iiii.  
Muskles, eche situate and set vnder o-  
ther, of the whiche, the vppermost im-  
mediately touchyng the fleshy skyn, be  
called the Byaswyle descendyng Mus-  
kles, in Latin Musculi obliqui descendentes.  
Of these Muskles there be two, in ech  
syde of the belly one, so that these two  
Byaswyle descendyng Muskles meete  
together in the middle region of the  
belly, & be extended or spread ouer al the  
amplitude of the belly, shapynge thereto  
as it were an other coate.

The

The second Muskles be named the  
byaswyle ascendyng Muskles, in La-  
tin, Musculi obliqui ascendentes, whose be-  
ing is immediately next vnder the inner  
face of the first Muskles. Of these also  
as of the first, in ech syde of coast of the  
belly is there one.

The thirde sort of the belly Muskles,  
as they be situate in order, the one vn-  
der the other, be called the ryght Mus-  
kles, in latin, Musculi recti, which be dou-  
ble as the other two before.

The ryght  
Muskles.

The fourth be nominated the ouer-  
thwart Muskles, in Latin, Musculi trans-  
uersi, because they transuerse or ouer-  
thwart the belly. In ech side likewyle  
of whom, ther is one of these Muskles,  
which in the middle line of the belly en-  
counter eche other, as I haue sayde of  
the aboue named thre Muskles, so  
that the byaswyle ascendyng, and the  
byaswyle descendyng, with the ouer-  
thwart Muskles, dooeth bothem couer  
and compasse all the whole breadth of  
the belly, but so do not the ryght Mus-  
kles,

The ouer-  
thwart Mus-  
kles.

The use of the  
four belly  
piskles.

kles; for the breadth of them is but  
small in comparison of the other. All  
these four Muskles be to the entrailes  
and bowels within the belly; as four  
several coates, by the vertue and helpe  
of whom, together with the ayde of  
the midriffe, al expulsion both upward  
and downward in the guttes, in the  
stomacke, in the matrix of the woman  
in the tyme of labour; and also in the  
bladder in tyme of making of water,  
is wrought; and yet beydes this vtili-  
tie, they clothe (as I haue sayde) de-  
fende, fortifie, & strength the inwardes  
of the belly.

Of the Kell, called Peritoncum.

Capit. iiii.



nder the last Muskle of the  
belly, called the ouerthwarte  
Muskle, immediatly succee-  
deth a certayne thin rime kel-  
or skin, named in latin, Peritoncum; whi-  
che compasseth rounde the amplitude  
and

The Perito-  
nium and his  
office.

and large out of the belly, reaching his  
 signum at the wynders of the lympe  
 bones, and from thence diuynge and  
 spredynge it selfe abroade, vnderneath  
 the ouerthwaite of the nide, the nide  
 part of the short ribbes. To be short  
 this raine vnderneath all the whole ca-  
 uitie, holonelle, by amplitude of the bel-  
 ly, from the nide to the flanks of  
 share, immediately contaynyng and in-  
 uoluing in it selfe all the whole conten-  
 tes of the belly, euen as the saine exten-  
 der the shell of an egge enuironeth and  
 compasseth immediately all the contay-  
 ned meate of an egge. And as for Perito-  
 neum, both not only enuironeth all the en-  
 trayles of the belly in his compasse, but  
 also yeeldeth vnto each entrayle a coate  
 and webbe of the cloth of his owne bo-  
 dy, by the which his matter, they be the  
 more acutely straightly affixed or faste-  
 ned vnto himselfe, and farther in them  
 firmed the stronger within the cauitie  
 of the belly, and vnder this Peritoneum  
 be contayned these bowels folowynge:

The vse and  
 profite of the  
 Peritoneum.

asman 22112  
 21112 21112

First

**Bowles conti-  
ued under the  
Peritomenus.**

2. **O**f the stomacke, which is the first receptacle and receiver of the foode, or meate chawed and mashed before in the mouth, from thence descending ouer the winds pipe, downe along the stomacke gut, and so consequently into the stomacke, then the Ilell, in Latin *Meconum*, the liuer, the spleene or melt, the bladder, & the matrix, then yet the guttes, vnder the guttes the hydries, the moister vayne, and the maister artire. But here we shal begin first to en- treat of the matrix, as the part which maketh chiefly to our purpose.

need more of an edge. And as for Peltos-

## The declaration of the names.

**Diners names  
of the Patrie.**

**M**ere ye shall vnderstand, that  
these three wordes, the **M**atrie,  
the **G**other, and the **M**oome,  
do signifie but one thing, that  
is to say, The place wherein the seede  
of man is conceived, fettered, conserved,  
nourished, & augmented, vnto the time  
of



of deliuerance, in Latin named Vterus & Matrix. The necke of thys wombe, o<sup>r</sup> therwyle called the womans priuite, we wyl call the wombe passage, o<sup>r</sup> the priue passage: in Latin Cernex vteri, & pudendum muliebre: the extreme end, o<sup>r</sup> p<sup>r</sup> fyrst entraunce of this priue o<sup>r</sup> wombe passage, ye shall name the passage port: for because that it is the port gate, o<sup>r</sup> entraunce of that passage, o<sup>r</sup> way into the wombe o<sup>r</sup> matrix: in Latin. Vulua, i. Válua.

The wombe passage, the o<sup>r</sup> the necke of the wombe, taketh his beginning at the passage porte, and from thence styeth and mounteth ryght bpwarde vnder the sharebone like a great coyduct, varying in length & bredth accordinge to the age of the woman.

The necke of  
the Passage

To make especyall mentyon of the length of this wombe passage, were but follye, for the diuersities thereof. Notwithstandyng in women it is esteemed of the length of. x. xi. xii. o<sup>r</sup> xiii. fingers bredth, some more, some lesse. And thys we maye saye that nature hath so pro-

D.i.

uyded

The fyft booke.

wyded that it is of fufficient length, to receaue the priuite part of manne, in the generation, directinge the fame towar- des the Wombe port, thow the which the fede is naturally sent from the man into the Wombe oꝝ mother, thereto hel- ping an attractife powver, which is in- let and geuen to the Wombe, to attracte and drawe towardeſ it ſelfe the ſeede parted from the man (ſo that there bee no other let.)

Of the wombe and his partes. Capi. vi.



**A** the head oꝝ bypper ende of this wombe paſſage, is ſytu- ate the Wombe it ſelfe, which in Women (beyng not with chyld) is verye lyttle, contract and dra- wen together: ſo that the amplitude oꝝ largenes therof, paſſeth not the amply- tude and largenes of the priuite paſſage, the which thing to ſome may ſeme vn- credible, yet by Anathomye ye may ſee it  
to

The wombe oꝝ  
Patrie in two  
men not with  
chylde contract.

to be true. And for all this contraction,  
or drawing so nere together of the Ma-  
trix, the outsyde of it is very smoothe,  
moyst, glysteryng, and reddyshe, as it  
were a little redde tempered with a  
great deale of whyte, the insyde also of  
the Matrix is smooth: yea, & though  
that the Matrix, as we haue said, be ful  
of riuels & wrinkles, by the reason that  
it is so contract fro a great amplitudo  
or largenes (as may be seen in the Wombe  
or Matrix of women with chylde) to this  
little compasse, yet may a boddy scarce  
perceiue in this inner side any wrinkle,  
(albeit that there be infinite) they be so  
finely and neere drawen togeather.

This contraction of the Matrix, no  
doubte, was made by nature, for these  
causes, partely that at suche tyme that  
the woman is not with chylde, it should  
occupye the lesse roome in the bellye:  
but chyeslye that in tyme of concep-  
tyon of the seede, the lyttle holke or  
quantitle of the sayde seede, at hys  
fyrst conceauynge into the womans

The cause of  
the contraction  
of the Matrix.

D.ii.

Mother

Mother, may be touched rounde about  
euery Where of the mother: and as ye  
woulde say, amplexed or embrased, and  
contayned (as the nut shell contayneth  
immediatly the nut) of the inner Walles  
or face of the matrix: and as the seede is  
viuified, shaped, and doeth encrease, so  
doeth the amplitude of the matrix en-  
large and waxe bygger: so that at the  
last when the infant cometh to his full  
groweth, or when the woman is great  
with chylde: then this coate or kell of  
the Matrix is as thinne as a bladder,  
where that in tyme of his contraction,  
or when the woman is not with chylde,  
the coate or walle of the Matrix is as  
good as halfe an inch thicke.

Howe the Ma-  
trix varieth the  
thicknes and  
thynnnes of his  
coate.

The forme of  
the Matrix.

Nowe ye shall vnderstande, that the  
founde or botome of the matrix is not  
perfectly round bowlywyse, but rather  
lyke the forme of a mans harte, as it is  
paynted, sauinge that the partition or  
cliffe in the matrix betwene both cor-  
ners, the ryght and the lefte, is not so  
profoundly dented inwarde as the  
cliffe

clyfte in the harte: For in the inward  
 vault, cauitie, or holownesse of the ma-  
 trix, there is a certayne seame, whiche  
 begynnyng in the middle of the fore-  
 part of the matrix, at the wombe port,  
 doth passe forth by that foreside, & so by  
 the bottome to the hynder syde of the  
 matrix, & from thence along downe to  
 the wombe port on the backsyde, as ye  
 may more evidently see in the figure  
 hereof. This seame then is as it were a  
 litle seperation, marke, or hyme, di-  
 uiding the wombe in two equall partes  
 or sydes, the right and the left. For  
 withstanding, in the matrix there is  
 but one vault, cauitie, holownesse, or am-  
 plitude, the forsayde seame beyng but  
 as it were a note, sig. 11, or scarce sensi-  
 ble marke running along the sydes and  
 botome of the wombe. But this seame  
 or line where it passeth the bottome of  
 the mother or wombe, is more crasse,  
 thicke, and fleshye, propendyng, hel-  
 dyng, hangyng, or lokyng downward  
 into the vault or amplitude of the  
 Diu Wombe,

A certayne  
 seame becomynge  
 the Matrix as  
 it were in two  
 partes.

In the Matrix  
 but one holo-  
 wnesse.

## The first booke.

Wombe, the Whiche lyne in the sydes is  
 nothyng so mannyfeste ne sensible to be  
 perceyued. Thus ye may see, that the  
 myddle part of the bottome of the Ma-  
 trix, is not so hye as the two corners or  
 angles on both sydes be. Other distinc-  
 tiones or Separations in the Matrix is  
 there none, albeit that in tymes passed,  
 diuers Clarke haue Wrytten, & many  
 other haue beleened, that there shoulde  
 be seue felles, or seuen distinct places in  
 the matrix, in thre of the Which on the  
 ryght syde, shoulde onely men chyldren  
 be conceaued, and in the other thre on  
 the left syde Women chyldren: and yf it  
 chanced that the seede Were conceaued  
 in the seventh fell, which was the mid-  
 delmoste, then that shoulde betome a  
 monster, halfe a man & halfe a Woman.  
 The Which al is but lyes, Dreames, and  
 fonde fantasies. For the womans ma-  
 trix, as I haue said, is euen as a strong  
 bladder, hauyng in it but one vniuersal  
 holonesse, and the chyldre when it lyeth  
 in it, lyeth euer on the one syde more  
 then

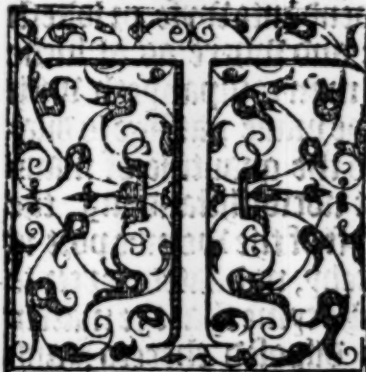
Certayne  
 erroneous opini-  
 ons of bil-  
 felles in the  
 wombe.

then on the other, the head being to-  
wardes one of the corners or angles, &  
not vpryght toward the middle bridge

The matrix  
hath but one  
colours.

Of the mother port.

Cap.vi.



The entraunce  
of the matrix  
or wombe, is  
named the  
womb port or  
mother port,  
the whiche in  
substance &  
fashion muche  
both resemble

Of the mother  
port, the situa-  
tion thereof.

the founne of an haukes bel, or other li-  
tle moyses bels, sauing that it is muche  
bigger, hauing a clift ouerthwart the  
body thereof, as ye may more playnly  
perceiue by the figure hereof. And this  
port of the matrix is of substance more  
thicke & crasse then the rest of the same,  
& as it were a kernel, round & clift in the  
middlest. This womb port also is faste-  
ned & affixed to the vpper end of the womb  
passage, as all the rest of the wombe is.

Of the  
womb  
passage  
the  
situation  
thereof.

Dii

How



## The first booke.

Howe be it, the middle parte of the wombe port, or the snowt therof, where it bosseth downeward, doth touche no side nor part of the wombe passage, but onely holdeth pendante wyse, or lokeeth downeward: and where as at suche tyme that the man companyeth with the woman, the priue passage is dilated & opened to the quantitie of mans priue part, yet notwithstanding, the mouth of the clyst of the wombe port is not moued thereby, ne dilated: excepte that it be at suche tyme that the matrix beyng apt and disposed thereto, and other conditions requisite, this wombe port do naturallye open it selfe, attractyng, drawyng, and suckyng into the wombe the seede, by a vehement and naturall desyre.

Notwithstanding, when the seede is conceaued in at this wombe port, it doth not alwayes remaine there, but many tymes issueth out agayne for some indisposition founde other in the place or in the seede it selfe. Albeit yf the seede be retay-

The wombe  
wel disposed  
naturally  
attracteth the  
seede.

retayned styll in the matrix, then doeth the wombe port close it selfe so fast and so firmly, that the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat without violence, and so doth remayne vntyl the tyme of deliuerance, at what tyme agayne it dilateth and openeth it self, in such am-  
 plitude and largenesse, that it is wonderfull to speake of.

The closenes of  
the matrix after  
the seede com-  
ceaued.

**O**f the vessels of seede, called the  
stones, with other therto appertayning.  
 Cap.viii.

**O**f eche syde of the matrix  
lieth a stone, which both be  
called the womans stones,  
wherein is ingendred the  
seede & sparne that com-  
meth from the woman, not so stronge,  
firme, and mightie in operation as the  
seede of man, but rather weake, fluy,  
colde, and moyste, and of no great fir-  
mitie: howbeit, as conuenient and  
proper for the purpose for the whiche it  
was ordeyned, as the seede of man for  
his

## The first booke.

his purpose. These stones be nothing so  
bygge as the stones of man, but lesse  
flatter, muche fashioned after the shape  
of a greate and brode almond. The sub-  
staunce and bodye of these stones is not  
made massyfe, or compact and softe, as  
mens stones be, but as it were many  
litle kernelles sette together, betweene  
the which is much holonesse, and ther-  
in conteyned a certayne thynne watery  
substaunce. This substaunce of the sto-  
nes is inuolued & wrapped with a coate  
or thynne skynne, very firmly annexed  
to the foresayde substaunce, which also  
doth receiue into hym selfe the seede  
dryngers. He may name the same coate  
in Latin *Supergeminalis*,

### Of the seede dryngers. Cap. ix.

Of the seede  
dryngers.

**T**he seede dryngers, called  
in Latin *Vasa semeadferentia*,  
be two baynes & two arti-  
cles, whiche come to these  
two stones, to reche one  
bayne & one artire, and take theyr begin-  
nyng

nyng on this wyse.

Under the guttes ( as ye may see in the figures hereof ) be situate the great maister bayne, in Latine Caua Vena, and the great artire, Arteria magna. The maister bayne hath his originall of the liuer, from whence it descendeth downe warde along the loynes ; bntyll it attayne vnto the begynnyng of Os sacrum, Where the artire ( as the Worthyer ) begynneth to mount vppon the maister bayne, and in this place they both diuide them selues in two partes forke wyse ; the ryght part of the forke proceeding into the right thygh and legge, the lefte, into the lefte legge, the bayne euermore associate with the artire, the whiche hath his begynnyng of the hart, from whence he is descended through the midryffe to this place, distributing to all places whereby he passeth artires.

The originall of the great bayne.

The office of the great bayne is, to conduct and cary from the liuer ( which is the blood shoppe, where the blood is engendred )

The office of the bayne.

## The first booke.

engendred) to all partes of the bodye blood, therewith to noryshe them. For to the great wayne where they passe, there commeth innumerable smal waynes on euery syde, even as to the great riuers many small streames on euery syde do resort.

The office of  
the artires.

The office of the artires is, to spreade abroad in the body the vitall and lynes lye spyrre, engendred in the bosome of the harte, and to refrethe and temper the innoderate heate whiche other wyse mought be engendred in the bodye, the whiche also sleape we or wake we, do continuallye moue and beate, therefore the motion of them is called the pulse, and loke after what manner the hart (whiche is the well of these artires) doeth moue or stirre it selfe, and euen so do they.

The hart and  
artires haue  
two contrary  
motions.

The hart then, and the artires thorow him, haue two contrary motions: one is, in cloyng it selfe, and the other, in dilatynge and openynge of it selfe: whiche sorte of moynges, we call the  
beatynge

beating of the pulces, When the artires  
do open themlelues, then they attract,  
draw, or suck in fresh ayre, to temper the  
heate of the body withall, and also spi-  
rituall and thin pure blood. But when  
they close themselfe, then do they expel  
misty fumes, and hotte breathes, or vn-  
naturall vapoures, suche as of necessi-  
tie alwayes be ingendred in all partes  
of the body, by the whiche blood doeth  
passe, for causes to long here to be allea-  
ged: nether is there any notable wayne  
vnassociate of an artyre.

Nowe on the right side and forepart  
of the great vaine proceedeth a braunch,  
deriued from that place a longe the  
loines downewardes to the head of the  
ryghte stone: from the ryghte syde lyke-  
wyse and forepart of the great artyre,  
descendeth a braunche thwartring ouer  
the great vaine downe towardes the  
right loynes, where it meeting with the  
foresayde vaine braunche, before they  
emplant themselfe in the head of the  
stone, become both as one bodye, here  
strayght

The meeting of  
the vaine and  
artyre

strayght enlarging themselfe, lytle and lytle, stepellwyse, not fully rounde, but flattythe before and behynde, With the broder ende plantynge & infixing themselfe into the head of the ryght stone.

And at the vpper and smaller ende Where this bayne braunche and artyze braunch do fyfth meete, they begynne to entermyngle, embzayde, and enterlade eche other in suche infinite wyse, Wytthynge & deuindinge themselves in thousandes of lytle braunches, as it were hayres of the head, the one embrasyng, compassynge and ouerthwharting the other so confusedly, that no wyt can expresse the ryghte maner and order of their commixtion. Cal this part then in Englysh, the braded body, in Latin *Varicosiformem plexum*: Whose nether and broder ende, as I sayde before, affyxed and implanted in the vpper head of the right stone, sendeth forth braunches and armes into the bodye of the same stone, manyfolde wyse dyspersed, spred, and commyxt.

And

The braded  
body.



And also into the skyn or couer of the stone, called before <sup>Supergeminalis</sup>, from the sayd braded bodye, be there deriued manye small braunches, muche lyke vnto the lyttle small baynes whiche ye see reddish in a mans eye.

And looke what description and processe, we haue made of the ryghte syde seede bringers, to the ryght stone, euen the same vnderstande of the lefte syde seede bringers to the left stone, sauyng that the bayne braunche whiche cometh to the left stone, mosse commonly taketh his original of the nether side of the left kidney bayne, and not immediately of the great bayne as the other.

And ye shal vnderstand agayne, that from the foresaid vaine & artire of eche syde at the place, where they first conjunction or meting is, proceedeth a certayne braunche of the bayne, assolate with the artire, which both passe forth together to the found or bottome of the Mother or Matrix, of that syde where they stande, there delatynge and spredynge

Baynes deriued  
to the bottome of  
the Matrix.

The fyrst booke.

dyngge themselfe abroade in manyfolde  
smaller braunches, to the nouryshment  
of the body of the matrix.

Of the offyce and vse of these seede  
bryngers. Caput. r.

The seene pro-  
create of the  
wayne blood  
and the artire.  
All blood.

**T**hrough these seede bryngers,  
blood out of the waynes, and  
liuely spirit out of the artires  
be deryued; yea, or rather (to  
speake more properlye) attract or dra-  
wen into the stones, there by vertue and  
natural instincton of the place altered  
and chaunged, beyng first confuled to-  
gether the blood and the spirite, by mu-  
tuall amplerations or embracements  
of these two vesselles, the wayne and the  
artyre, beyng conioyned and vnite in  
one very body, first begynnynge in the  
bradyd body, and the after in the whole  
bodye of the stone: So that thorow  
the manyfolde and infinite circulaty-  
ons of the attracted matter by the con-  
duyctes or waynes infinitely intricate  
and

and wrythed with a thousand reuolutions or turagaynes (and all in the litle compasse of the body of the stones) the blood and spirite conuined togeather, getteth another nature and propertie both in colour and in effect.

*Note theingin  
and policie of  
nature.*

And here ye shall vnderstande, that most commonly alwayes when that nature is disposed to make a transmutation of any matter, that can she not do, vnlesse she haue a mine, shoppe, or workehouse, wherein by continual circulation of the matter transmutable, she may bryng her purpose to passe. Euen as mettalles and other minerals of the earth, haue theyr secrete and vnusible baynes, in whiche by dayly and long coagitation, mouyng, circulation, and hurling together, they be brought from one forme to another, & made metals of that which before was none.

*Of these sort of mines, there be foure*  
principall in the body of man.

*Foure min's in  
mans body.*

The first is the mine of blood, which is the lyuer, in whom the iuyce of meate,  
E. i. before

## The first booke.

before of colour Whyte, is transmuted into red, made apt and fitte to nourishe all partes of the body, attract and drawen out of the stomacke and guttes, thorow very small and infinite lytle baynes into the lyuer.

The hart is the  
seconde mine.

The second mine is the hart, which of the blood attract and drawen from the great maister bayne, procedyng out of the foresayde lyuer, into his parlers, doth engender vehement & lively spirite, commixed with depured & greatly elaborated blood, within the selles of the hart, from thence sent forth thorow the artires, into all partes of the body, being in colour yealowyshe, thynne and hotte blood.

The brayne the  
thyrde mine.

The thyrde mine is the brayne, of whom all the sinewes take their originall. In whom the wyttie spirite, the spirites of mouyng, and the spirites of al sensibillitie be engendred, and thorow the sinewes sent to all partes of the bodye. For all such partes as moue and feelee, haue that by reason of sinewes deriued

riued vnto those places from the head.

The fourth mine is the stones, in whō The fourth mine is the stones. by commixtion of al the other thre foresaid metalles of the body, that is to say, bayne blood, arteriall blood, and lively spirits engendred in the head, is engendred & produced seede, which bestowed in his due place, becommeth like a perfection to the creature from whence it came, that is to say, of mankind, man.

But ye shall vnderstand, that the receyving of the seede into the stones, is How the seede is receyved into the stones. not that there should be any one onely caue, holownesse, sell, vaulte, or parler in the body of the stone, wherein it myght be receyued and retayned, lyke as the holownes of an egge, the meate beyng out of it, or of an hasell nutte, the kernell out of it, but farre other wyse: for the stones (chiefly in man more then in woman) be massife, not hard, but delicate & soft, as a soft kernell, full of sual and almost vsensibler whyte baynes, reuoluing them selfe in and out a thousand folde, and manifolde wise intricat

E. ij.

toget

## The first booke.

together, Within the Which the seede is conueyed, carped, concocted, or digested and altered, by vertue of the white flesh, Which intercurrenth and intermingleth it selfe euery Where betweene the foresayd vaine, like as the earth doth intercurrenth and intermingle it selfe betweene and among the small fibres, bearded, or heares of rootes. The Whyte coate also or Walles of the said baynes, helping not a lytle to the transmutation of the colour from red to Whyte.

Howe the  
coloure of the  
seede is trans-  
muted.

For euery thing that is liquid, as the seede is, receyueth alwayes a nature of the place, mine, or conduite, by Which it runneth and passeth, so that when the conduite is very smal and narrowe, and long withal, then the liquour that passeth through it, receyueth & sauoureth so much the more the nature and condition of that vessel or conduite. As for an example: If there were a conduite or pipe made of lead, whose length were ten foote, and the inner compasse, holonesse, or cavitie of the same, but so much that

Liquid things  
saue the  
nature of the  
vessel through  
which it run-  
neth.

that an heere myght passe throught it :  
 then say I, that a gallo or quart of wa-  
 ter passing and thrillyng throught that  
 narrow conduite shoulde sauour much  
 moze of the nature and qualitie of lead,  
 then though the holownesse of the a-  
 foresayde conduite, beyng styll of the  
 abouenamed length, were so large that  
 a bowle myght enter and passe throught  
 the same. For this reason, that when  
 the water hath to passe throught so na-  
 row passage, it maketh þ longer iour-  
 ney, and yeeldeth the smaller threed or  
 streen, & therefore is touched moze im-  
 mediately and intyely of the insydes or  
 inner walles of the conduite. And fur-  
 ther, well ye wote that a lytle quantitie  
 is sooner overcome and altered, then a  
 great. As a spoone full of wine standing  
 all nyght in a pewter or brasen pot, shal  
 sauour muche moze of the pottle, then a  
 pynte of the same. Likewise, yf a man  
 woulde coole hot drynke by pouryng  
 of it out of one pot or cup into another,  
 sooner and moze perfectly shall the cir-

A lytle quantite  
 sooner overcome  
 then a greater.



## The first booke.

The pollicie of  
nature.

cumstant colde ayre alter and coole it,  
beyng poured out very softly, makynge  
therof a fine and smal streene, then yf he  
dyd the same hastely. And truely this  
engine and pollicie doth nature vse in  
euery part where she causeth any nota-  
ble transmutation, makynge the matter  
transmutable to passe through long  
straightes & narrow turagayne lanes,  
the matter bolwyng, enclynyng, and  
aptyng it selfe alwayes to the dispositi-  
on and nature of the vesselles thowrwe  
which it cooleth or runneth, so that the  
sparme or seede of man or woman, being  
attracted by the foresaid seede bringer's  
into the stones, passeth by many narrow  
straightes, which beyng before bayne  
blood and artire blood, by vertue of the  
places through which it had to passe,  
becommeth from red colour to whyte,  
& of much more perfection then it was  
before. For this transmutation of blood  
into sparme, is not only in colours, but  
also in properties and absolute perfecti-  
on. What greater wonder or miracle is  
there,

The transmu-  
tation of blood  
into sparme.

there, wherin we may knowledg and beholde the omnipotencie of God, then to consyder how that of the meate and drynkk which we dayly do eate, by digestiō first of the stomacke, the fine iuice therof is seperated from the drosse and grosser part: & then after at the seconde hande, the foresayde iuice passyng thorow the guttes, attract and drawen into the lyuer thorothe infinite sinial baynes, there transmuted into blood, from the lyuer sent into the great maister bayne, from the which the hart drawyng part, transmuteth certayne therof into Actire blood. Agayne, the stones drawyng other part, maketh thereof & of the actire blood, whorled, circulate, and coagitate together, sparue: which sparue bestowd and conceived where it should be, becommeth mankynd.

How meate and drynke is transmuted into blood.

This foresaid seede, as we said before, is nothyng so firme, perfect, absolute & mightie in woman as in man, & yet can you not call this any imperfection or lacke in woman: for the woman in her

The seede in woman, not so firme as in man

E.iiij. kynde,

## The first booke.

kind, and for the office & purpose Wherefore she was made, is euen as absolute and perfect as man in his kynd, neither is woman to be called (as some do) vnperfecter then man (for because that man is more myghtier and strong, the woman weaker & more feeble.) For by this reason, the Horse, the Lion, the Dolphin, Camell, & many other beastes, should be called more perfect then man, to the whiche man is not able to compare in naturall myght and strength.

But truely, compar yng one man to another, suche as be gelded & want the genitozies, be much feebler, weake, & effeminate, then other: in voyce womanlyke, in gesture & condition nice, in softnes of skin and plumpnes of the body fatter and rounder, in strength & force impotent, nothing manly ne bolde, the which imbecillitie in them, may well be named imperfection. For imperfection is, When that any perticuler creature doth lacke any propertie, instrument, or qualitie which commonly by nature  
is

Altho be vnperfecter the one  
then the other.

is in all other, or the more part of that kynd, comparing it to other of the same kynd, and not of an other kynd.

Thus we haue sufficiently talked of the seede bryngers & stones, with theyr offices. Now shall I declare what becomneth of the seede beyng thus engendred, and whyther it is conueyed.

¶ Of the way by the which the seede is sent from the stones to the Angles and corners of the Matrix. Cap. xi.



**A**t the lower end and foote or base of the braded body, where it is infixed and planted into the head of the stone, on the backe syde halfe of the stone

ther is the begynnyng of another vessel, whiche may be called the seede carper, in Latine Vas semen deferens, whose body is whyte and hardysh, like an harde sinew. And from that part where it taketh his begynnyng, it passeth

¶ Of the seede carper.

seth downewardes to the syde of the stone, hoodpyng and compassyng along the syde therof (as ye may more expresse perceiue in the figure hereof) till it come to the lower ende or base of the stone, from thence agayne resting or remouing bywarde, creeping along the other syde of the same stone, till it come & attayne in maner to the middle region of the stone on that side, all the way as it creepeth, firmly fastned and affixed to the body of the stones, as the eye braunches do fasten them selues to the walles, by which they creepe.

The belly and inner syde of the foresaid seede carrier, wherby it cleaueth to the outsyde or face of the stone, beyng flattysh, the backe or outer syde therof roundyshe and smothe: from the beginning and head of this vessell, to this later ende, in maner of equal corpulencie or bygnesse, but infinitely wreathed as an adder or yeele whē they slide fast or hastily, make of theyr long bodies many halfe hoopes, halfe circles, or wreathes

Wreathes nere toyne together: howe  
beit, these Wreathes be not so frequent  
and thicke in the woman as in the man.  
Therefore this part of the feede car-  
pers may be called the *Worme*, in Latyn,  
*Corpus lumbricosum*, for because that it hath  
many conuolutions, as *Wormes* lying  
together haue.

Of the part cal-  
led the *Worme*.

And if ye be disposed to separate this  
foresayd *Worme* from the face of the  
stone with a sharpe knife, ye shall per-  
ceyue no maner of holownesse, or cauitie  
of vaine, or other cobblite: but as it were  
a ruggednesse, by reason of separation  
from the partie to whom it was before  
so surely annexed. And yet no doubt  
there is verily in it cauitie and holo-  
wnesse, by and throughe the which seabe  
is caried into the angles of the *Worme*.  
Nowe then when this foresayd *Worme*  
nue body hath attayned to the middle  
region (as it were) of the stone, it begin-  
neth to depart from the body of the  
stone, and is no more (as it was before)  
thicke

thicke breathed, but playne, smothe, & round like a round sinew, With an vn-  
 sensible holownesse, Departing from the  
 stone along the inside of the belly ouer-  
 thwarting the guttes, to the angle or  
 corner of the Matric, on the ryght syde  
 thereof (yf it procede from the ryght  
 stone) and on the left syde (if it come from  
 the left stone) and that not strayght or  
 forwaright, but somewhat bowing &  
 crooking to selfe in two or thre crookes  
 by the way. These seede carvers recey-  
 ueth the seede confused, conuoluted, and  
 digested in the stones and foresaid seede  
 bringers, conueying and directyng the  
 same from the stones to the insyde of  
 the corners of the Matric, so that they  
 whiche do open dead women, shall at  
 wayes perceiue in the holownes of the  
 Matric these two angles or corners  
 specially beedauided or imbrued with a  
 whyle Lynny and thymie cleare mat-  
 ter, whiche no doubt is the womans  
 seede. And in women hauiing great  
 and



and feruent desire to any man, this seede  
 doth issue from this foresayde place,  
 dothne along to the womans priuy pas-  
 sage, moystring al that part, as it were  
 with a dewe. Aristotle and other mo,  
 do suppose that this seede in woman,  
 serueth for no other purpose, but onely  
 to recite, moue, and styre the woman  
 to pleasure. But some peraduenture  
 would thinke that this were but a sim-  
 ple & an idle or slender purpose, which if  
 they dyd more nerely consider the mat-  
 ter, should perceiue it to be a iust, great,  
 and necessary cause. For if that the god  
 of Nature had not instincted, and inset  
 in the body of man and woman, such a  
 vehement and ardent appetite & lust,  
 the one lawfully to company with the  
 other, neyther man ne woman would  
 neuer haue ben so attentife to the wor-  
 kes of generation and encrease of  
 posteritie, to the bitter decay in short  
 tyme of al mankind. For ye shal heare  
 some women in time of their trauayle,  
 moued through great payne and intol-  
 erable

The picture  
 of nature.

## The first booke.

lerable anguyſhe, forſweare and bolwe  
them ſelfe, neuer to company with a  
man agayne, yet after that the panges  
paſſed, within ſhort whyle, for entyre  
loue to theyr hufbandes, and ſingular  
naturall delite betweene man and wo-  
man, they forget both the ſorow paſſed,  
and that that is to come. Such be the  
prauie workes of God, and ſuch be the  
prickes of nature, which neuer createth  
no ſpeciall pleaſure vnaccompanied  
with ſonie ſorowe, neyther is there for  
the moſt part any ſorowe, but that it  
hath annered ſonie ioy or comfort, leſſe  
or more, to alleuiate and lyghten the  
burthen and weyght of diſpleaſure.

No ioy with  
out ſonie ſorow.

¶ Here is declared the ſituation of the  
bladder in women.

Capit. xii.



Now for the vicinite & neigh-  
bourhood that is betweene  
the prauie paſſage & the blad-  
der, here I wyll declare a  
lytle the nature of the bladder.

The

The bladder in woman is assituate  
and set vpon the forepart of the Vo-  
ther, whose necke is annexed, fastened,  
& vnite within the priuie passage, vpon  
the forepart therof, as ye may see in the  
figure hereof, so that it is very hard to  
seperate the one from the other. This  
necke of the bladder in women is much  
shorter then in men, the which necke is  
enuironed and compassed with a Mus-  
kle, called the bladder Muskle, as it  
were with a brode and flat hoope ring,  
firming and clasping the brine passage  
in such wyse, that no brine can issue out  
of the bladder, tyll such tyme that this  
Muskle do open it selfe, & licence it ther-  
to: Which thing cometh to passe, other  
when the bladder is ouercharged with  
brine, or els that the brine, although  
that it be but lytle in qualitie, yet haue  
some Colericke qualitie with it, which  
for the sharpnes and eagernes of the  
qualitie pricking & tickling the Muskle,  
causeth it to open it selfe many tymes  
for litle quantitie, &c.

The Muskle  
of the bladder.

How the blad-  
der Muskle is  
forced to open  
it selfe.

The

## The first booke.

The descrip-  
tion of the  
bladder.

The body of the bladder is round, into the which a lytle above the necke thereof, entreth the seconde brine conduites, deriued from ech kidney one.

And here ye must first vnderstande, that on eche syde of the great maister bayne, and lyke wise of the Artyze, is situate a kydney, in latin called Ren. And to euery of them from the sayde great bayne and great Artyze, is there deriued a braunche of the bayne, and another of the Artyze, by the which braunches the kydneys do attract and drawe blood vnto them, the which so drawen, they do (by theyr natieue offyce) seperate and deuide from the watery part, sending forth the water, other wise called brine do wne to the bladder, through the brine baynes or conduites.

Of the stone engendred in the backe.

In these kydneys is there many times in a great number of people, engendred the grauell or stone, which is called the stone in the backe, the which when it is broken, either of it selfe, or els by vertue of medicines, the grauell, rubbell, or peeces

peetes thereof, descend from the raines  
oz kidneis into the bladder, by the fore-  
named brine conduites, and so from the  
bladder out at the yarde, Where, yf the  
peetes be rockie oz bygge, it cauleth to  
the partie in the auoydyng of them, vn-  
tollerable paynes and tozment. And  
note that for the most part the ryght  
kidney euermoze standeth higher then  
the left.

Nowe agayne ye shall vnderstand,  
that When the brine, pisse, oz Water is  
once entred through the foresayd brine  
conduites, into the bladder, it can not  
returne bpwarde againe the way that  
it came (Were the bladder neuer so full)  
for because that Where as the said brine  
conduites doo enter into the bladder, in  
the inner face of the bladder, there be set  
before the mouth oz gull of the condu-  
ites, certaine litle skinny flappes, which  
suffer any thyng to enter in, but When  
it is once entred, these skinnie flappes  
close the passage, and defende that no  
thyng can rebounde, ne reslue backe a-  
gayne,

The brine once  
entred into the  
bladder, can  
not reuert.

F. i.

gayne,

The first booke.

gayne, euen as it is in a payre of bellowes, which haue euer a great hole on the one syde thereof, to let into the bellowes great store of Wynde or ayre at once, but when the bellowes is full of Wynde, yf ye stop the nose thereof with somewhat, there wyll none thereof retorne agayne out by that way, the flappes of leather crosseing and defendyng the passage: yea, the more vehemently and the harder that ye presse both sydes of the bellowes togeather, the faster and more stiffly doth the flaps stop the way, and cleaue to the bordes of the bellowes, the violence and force of the Wynde closing and stoppyng his owne way, so that the bellowes would sooner breake, then that the ayre should come out there. And euen so it is in the bladder, sayyng that the sayde skynnie flappes of the bladder, be more craftily, properly, and artificially wrought, then any man can deuise.

When there is then any notable quantitie or qualitie of the brime, gathered

hered together in the bladder, the bladder Musale naturally doth open it selfe, and letteth it forth, passing thorow the priue passage on the forepart thereof.

In this bladder also, as in the raiues, is there in many people engendred the stone, Whereof commonly ensueth the strangury, distury, With other diseases. The stone engendred in this place, yf it be of any notable quantitie, is very hard or rather vnpossible to be dissolued, or cured Without incision and cutting out. But women be not so prone ne apt to engender the stone in the bladder as men be, because the necke of their bladder is shorter and larger, howbeit notwithstanding, dyuers of them be here With greivously encumbred.

The stone engendred in the bladder.

Of the Vaynes which resort to

the Matrix, and the partes thereof.

Item, of the Termes and their

courses, with the causes

thereof. Cap. xiii.

F. ij.

In



## The first booke.



**I**nasmuche as the absolute vnderstanding of the nature of the termes in women, can not wel be perceyued, except fyrst it be knowen what baynes, how many, from whence, & after what sort they do attayne to the Matrix: therefore first I Wyl entreate of them, and then consequently of the termes.

These notable  
baynes resor-  
tyng to the  
Matrix.

Claines then notable, which may be perceyued by Anatomie to reach from seuerall partes of the great Vena cava, or maister bayne, to the Matrix and the partes therof, be three, to whom for the more cleere, distinct, and eudent doctrine sake, I Wyl geue three distinct and diuers names. The first shalbe named the bottome baynes of the matrix. The second, the necke baynes of the matrix. The thyrde, the sharpe baynes.

The bottome  
baynes of the  
Matrix.

The bottome baynes be they, which proceede and take theyr begynnnyng at the seede banger baynes, from whence they attayne to the bottome or founde of the Matrix, there dilatynge them- selfe

selfe brode in manyfolde small flippes,  
nouryshyng the body of the Matrix, as  
hath been sayde already in the ende of  
the. ix. Chapter.

As touching the necke baynes of the <sup>The necke</sup> Matrix, ye shall vnderstand that in the <sup>baynes.</sup> fore-  
said. ix. chapter, I shewed you how  
that the great maister bayne, and the  
great artyze associate together, when  
they attaine about Os sacrum, they begin  
to diuide them selues in two partes  
forkwysse, of the which the right (and so  
likewysse the left) part of the forke is re-  
diuided in other two partes forkwysse  
also, whereof the vppermost and grea-  
test bayne passeth downe along tyll it  
come to the hockle bone, ouer whom it  
proceedeth into the vtter part of the  
thygh, & so along downe to the legges  
and feete. The innermost and leste or  
smaller part of bayne of this seconde di-  
uision, where it parteth from the vp-  
permost, passeth downe along vntyll  
it come to the great hole whiche is al-  
waies in the share bone, through which

F.iii.

it

## The first booke.

Of the necke  
baynes of the  
Matrrix.

it entreteth into the inner parte of the thygh or flanke. But by the way, or it attayne the sayd hole of the sharebone, it sendeth forth diuers slippes and smal braunches in the necke of the Matrrix, & the nether part of the body of the Matrrix, and also to the bladder, as ye may more cleerely see in the Figure hereof.

The share  
baynes.

The share baynes take their begynnyng at the insyde of the aboue named vppermost and greatest bayne, euen at the place where it beginneth to passe ouer the hockle bone, frō whence this slip is deriued on eche syde, that is, both the ryght and the left, vnto the myddle of the sharebone, where in men it sendeth forth braunches into the skinne that couereth the priue part & the coddes, and also the Peritoneum. Whiche is the place that is betweene the fundement & the yarde. In women this bayne where it attayneth the middle part of the sharebone, it deriueeth and spreadeth it selfe into the lappes, sydes, or extreame ende of the priue passage, and also in  
the

the sayd Peritoneum: And this shal suffice  
for the declaration of the waynes whi-  
che resort to the matrix and her partes,  
saue that ye must vnderstande, that  
loke what order or procession of vaines  
commieth to the matrix from the ryght  
syde, the same selfe order is lykewyle  
in the lefte syde: and agayne, that  
none of these waynes runne to the Ma-  
trix or otherwhere, vnassociate of an  
artire.

Nowe to come to the declaration of  
the nature of termes: ye shal vnderstand  
that they be called in Latin Menstrua, so,  
because that once in a moneth they hap-  
pen allwayes to womankind after. xiiii.  
or. xv. yceres of age passed (beyng in  
theyr perfect health) In Englishe they  
be named Termes, because they re-  
turne eftsoones at certayne seasons,  
tymes, and termes, and some name  
them their flowers. what name so-  
euer ye geue vnto it, ye shall wite, that  
the thyng meant thereby, is nothyng  
els, but the issuing of certayne blood,  
F. iiii. compres

what is meant  
by this word  
Termes.

## The first booke.

comprehended in the baines of the matrix, there by lytle & lytle collected and gathered betweene terme and terme, and so agayne at wont and accustomed tymes, by nature expelled and sente forth.

The which blood, the matrix baines do attract from the great Vena caua, into this part, and that not sodaynely or at once, but very soberly, and with much leasure, yea, so much as there is space betweene the one hauing of the flowres & the other (which is commonly three weekes, more or lesse, accordyng to the womans wont) so long be these sayde baynes in fillyng, and if they were soner full, soner also woulde they sende it forth agayne. For when they be once replenished, they can not conueniently or naturally conteine or dralbe any more, tyl they be lyghtened and discharged of that that is dralwen alreedy.

Wherefore at the foresayde certayne circuites and termes, the small endes of these matrix baynes open themselves in

in the inner face or superflie of the matrix, after an insensible & secrete priuie sort, and so let to passe forth this blood, which as I haue sayd, is called the womans termes.

The cause and reason why nature created this perpetual course of termes in women, in this: Forasmuche as almyghtie God had so institute that women shoulde be conceyued, efformed, or fashyoned, augmented, nourished, and brought to perfection. This coulde not be done vnlesse there were a commodious and conuenient place to this office assigned and destinate, whereof nature created the wombe or matrix to be the sayd receptacle, & house of office where in she mought at her leasure worke her deuine feates about the seede once conceived.

The cause of  
the ordinance  
of termes.

Agayne it is not inough the seede to be plated, vnlesse also it haue foode and nourishment, to the encrease and augmentation of the same, wherefore prudent Lady nature full wisely hath provided

## The first booke.

unded, that there shoulde alwayes be prest and redy a continuall course and resort of blood in the baynes of the matrix, as a very naturall course, spryng, fountayne, or Wel, euermore redy to arise, Water, and noyssh the feature, so sone as it shalbe cōteined, yea although the Woman do neuer conceiue, other because she accompanieth not With man, other els for some other infirmitie, yet is there no fault in Nature, Who hath prepared a place and foode to be at all tymes in a redinesse.

Which foode, although it is ordeyned for this necessary purpose, yet When the purpose fayleth (as it doth When there is no feature in the Wombe to be fedde therewith) it should be to the place but a burthen and vnprofitable load, there to remayne or lynger: Wherfore then I say, at her set and prescript tyme she laboureth to cleare her self of it, and to expell it as superfluous and seruing to no vse. The Which thing When she hath so Done, yet vnto the sayde baynes of this  
con-



continual spring, resorteth of newe a-  
gayne other freshe blood in the place of  
that that is departed, Whiche by litle &  
litle coolyng into them, in the wont cir-  
cuite of time refilleth them, and then yet  
issueth againe, & so this continual course  
doth keepe alwayes in Women, from  
their youth, til they come to about fiftie  
yeeres of age, or litle more or lesse, at  
what time naturally this spring dryeth  
away, which when it is gone, it is im-  
possible for the woman to beare any  
mo chyldren. For were the woman ne-  
uer so young & lusty, yet if she neuer had  
her termes (as some such there be) she  
shal neuer also haue no chyldre, albeit it  
may be that she may conceaue, but the  
seede conceaued can not proue, but mel-  
teth & issueth forth agayne for lacke of  
nutriment. Itē ye shal note, that where  
as some write & say, that the Womens  
termes folow the course of the Moone,  
so that in the full or in the wane of the  
moone they should allwaies come: this  
is not true, for they haue thē at one time  
and

They that haue  
no termes can  
not beare chyl-  
dren.

## The first booke.

Termes come  
not to al women  
lyke.

and other in all seasons of the Moone. Agayne, as they come not to al Women after one sort, or at one season, so is the tyme of theyr duraunce not all one in every Woman, for in some they lynger vpon them. v. vi. viij. yea. xij. dayes at ech terme, to their great esseoblishment & strong paynes in the backe. In some other commonly they passe not the space of three dayes at the vttermost, wherfore such sustaine litle or no paynes at that tyme.

To be short, all Women (for the most part) which be of very delicate & moyst complexion (as the sanguyne chiefly be) haue greatest abundance of termes, and longer tyme doth it endure vpon them. And contrary, such as be dry and collicke, other by nature, or labour and trauayle, & such that be of complexion cold, haue least store of termes, and lesse tyme do they endure vpon them. After what maner the feature conceaued is fedde & nourished with this blood (matter at other tymes of the termes) I  
will

Wyll declare, when that I haue some  
what fyrt shewed the nature of cer-  
taine caules, wherein the featur con-  
ceaued is wrapped and inuolued.

Of the three caules or wrappers wher-  
in the infant is lapped. Cap. cxiij.



he seeder conceaued  
into the wombe  
or Matrix of the  
mother, anon it is  
amplected, clip-  
ped, & embrased  
of the inner face  
of the matrix, the  
mouth or porte

therof in the meane while closed & shut  
exquisitely. The seede the when it hath  
ben a certaine litle space in the wombe,  
by the naturall heate, or rather by the  
inset & ingenite vertue of that place, is  
enuironed & enclosed round with three  
diuers coates, caules, or wrappers,  
which in Latin they call Inuolucra.

The featur  
conceyued, is  
wrapped in  
three caules.

The fyrt and most immediate or  
nearest

The first canle.

meant to the body of the conception, is  
a beere thimble and cleere saule, or skinnie,  
whiche containeth the whole about the  
whole feature, and yet is fastened to no  
part of the feature, but onely at the na-  
uell by certayne vapours and artynes,  
whercof we wyll speake anon: this  
saule in Greke is called Amnios, in Latin  
Agnus, is because it is as delicate as  
lambes be. The Midwives commonly  
call it the coyle, or biggin of the chyld, &  
some call it the chyldes thyt, the which  
also many times proceedeth alone with  
the chyld, eyther vppon the chyldes  
head, or one of the armes or legges.  
And then the women referue it as a  
thyng that shoulde betoken some great  
lucke to the chyld in tyme to come, for  
they beleue that euery chyld hath not  
such a coyle, because it doth appeare but  
seldom alone, vnatcompanied with the  
other saules. Betwene this wrapper  
or coyle, & the body of the infant, is col-  
lected and gathered the pelowish sweat  
which euaporeth continually from the  
skyn

Myne of the infant, whylest it is in the wombe.

The second wrapper or caule, in Greke is called Allantoïdes, in Latin Faremingo, in Englysh, these two termes do signifie (baggal wyle) for becaule that it is fashioned much after the shape of the outward skarpe of a bagge of an haggelle puddyng. The inner face and

The seconde wrapper.

of this caule is smoth and mylke, fastened to no part of the fyrst wrapper, but onely at the nauell of the chyld, and containeth also rounde about, in his compasse and caule, or holownes, the whole chyld, and the layd first caule.

Betweene this and the first caule, is gathered together all the store of vrine that the chyld maketh, during the time it is in the mother's wombe. Where in the industrie of nature is to be lauded, which so prouideth, that this pyle of vrine of the infant should be expelled betweene these two caules, and not remaine about the body therof, lest with the acrimony and eager sharpenesse heretof,

Where the vrine of the chyld becometh.

THE FIRST booke.

heretof, it should endamage and greue  
the tender body of the baby.

The chyld  
wrapper named  
Chorion.

The chyld wrapper of the feature  
is named Chorion of the Grekes, in La-  
tin, secunde or secundina, in Englyshe may  
call it the secundine: Albeit that in the  
second booke following, I do common-  
ly vse to name the whole after birth, the  
secundine: And no doubt but that the  
auncientes which gaue the name (of se-  
conde or secundina) to this wrapper, gaue  
the name of the whole to the part, for  
this terme (secunde or secundina) is proper  
& most due to the afterbirth, the which  
afterbirth, is nothyng els but an issu-  
ing forth, and procedyng of these three  
wrappers or caules, together with such  
grosse excrementes as haue ben engen-  
dred and remayning in the wombe, du-  
ryng the tyme of conception, and that  
immediatly after the chyld is first pro-  
ceeded & come to lyght: for first issueth  
the Infant, and then secondly the fore-  
said afterbirth, & therefore it may be iust-  
ly called the second birth, or secundine.

This

This wrapper oz caule the, doth not  
 vniuersally, and in euery part compasse  
 and couer the infant as the other two  
 wrappers do, but onely the myddle re-  
 gion, as it were from the vpper part of  
 the waste, to the share of the infante, so  
 that it is compassed with this wrapper  
 as with a brode hoope ryng, the lati-  
 tude oz breadth whereof, is commonly  
 to be esteemed about the breadth of. vi.  
 oz. viii. fingers, and so girdeth the childe  
 round about the body therof, as it were  
 a brode girth oz swadling band: but yet  
 ye must not vnderstand, that it shoulde  
 touche immediatly the bodye of the in-  
 fante, for betweene this and the bodye  
 thereof (as I haue declared before) be  
 the foresayd two other caules oz wrap-  
 pers, whiche generally incloseth round  
 the whole corpes of þ infant, where as  
 this hoope caule compasseth and coue-  
 reth but the middle region therof only.

The office & proper tie of this wrap-  
 per is suche: First the vtter face of it

The office of  
 the hoope  
 caule.

Gi

exact



exactly to the inner face and walles of the Matrix, by meanes of vnumera- ble small baynes and artyres, which at this tyme doe shewe them selues more clearly in the face of the Matrix, then at any other tyme, the which also cleaue vnto this hoope caule in euerye parte thereof, touchyng the same Matrix, so that the said hoope caule and the inner side of the matrix be basted very thicke together, by the immediate meanes of the sayde baynes and branches, even much lyke as the bodye of the Iuy tree basteeth and fasteneth it selfe vnto the walles of trees, whereby it creeperh by many hearie fibres or smal threedes.

This coniunctiō betweene the matrix and the hoope caule, reacheth vniuersally so farre and so brode, as the latitude and longitude of the hoope caule doth extende it selfe round about in the Matrix. And these foresayd vaines and artires, do not only knit and vnite these two together, but also entreteth into the substance of the hoope caule at euerye parte.

part thereof. And within the sayd substance of the hoope caule, these manyfold sinall bzaunches meete & entermingle the one with the other, the baynes with the baynes, and the Artires with the Artires, so that in theyr recountré and meetyng, they produce allwayes bigger and bigger baynes and Artires. (but fewer) tyll at the last all these become two great baynes, and two great artires. The which foure vessels from hence proceede together, passe & pearse through the other two caules spoken of before, & so entreth into the Navel of the child, so that the three caules by the meanes herof be attached, nailed, and fastened to the childes navel: and when they be entered into the Naul, the two baynes degenerate in one, the which fro this place mounteth vpward along the inner superficie of the belly, vntyl it haue attained into the liner, wher it entering diuideth it self againe into many slippes, so that no doubt the blood is carried through this navel baime, from the

Cu

baynes

**The first booke.**

vaines of the mothers Matrix into the  
liver of the chyld, from whence againe  
it is attracted into all partes nourishable  
of the Infant.

Agayne, the two Artyres passe from  
the Navell downeward, the one along  
the ryght syde of the chyldes bladder,  
the other along the left, tyll it attayne  
to the share Artires, whereof we spake  
before. Through these Artires, lyuely  
spirite and freshe ayre is derived out of  
the mother into the childe, wherewith  
the naturall heate of the chyld is vivifi-  
ed and refreshed.

And these two Artires with the fore-  
sayde navyll vayne, when the chyld is  
borne, begin to wither and drye, evere  
day more and more, & become much like  
a harpe string, without any holow-  
nesse or tautne. Yet ye shall note that  
there is another vessel, whiche taketh  
his original at the bottome, found, or vy-  
per part of the chyldes bladder, & exten-  
deth it selfe to the navel of the Infant,  
through whiche it passeth untill it come  
betweene

betweene the fyrst and the seconde caule  
 without the chyldes body, where, by a  
 priuie issue deuised by nature for the  
 same purpose, is expelled the brine of  
 the Infant, proceeding by this brine  
 wayne from the bladder, as partly was  
 spoken of before, that part of this brine  
 vaine which is within the body, when  
 the chyld is borne dryeth and wither-  
 eth away, as I sayde of the other.

*Which way  
 the chyld doth  
 expell the  
 brine.*

The inner superfacie or face of this  
 Chorion is very strongly affixed and fast-  
 ned to the vtter superfacie of the seconde  
 caule named Allantoides.

As for the bastynge that is betweene  
 the Matrice and Chorion, many tymes it  
 is weakened and effeoblised by reason  
 of euill, flegmaticke, or colericke hu-  
 mours therabout, betweene the bastin-  
 ges concealed, whiche ouernuche ha-  
 bouiding, do cloy the said bastynge vaines  
 or strynges, whereby many tymes the  
 one seuereth from the other before con-  
 uenient season, & so causeth abortement.

The mouthes or specks of the vaines in

G iii

the

## The first booke.

The substance  
of Chorion.

the matrix, wherby it cleaueth to Chorio,  
be called in latin Acetabula & Coriledones, for  
what cause, or vpon what reaso, is both  
nedelesse and vnprofitable here to be re-  
hearsed. Agayne, the substance of this  
Chorion is not thinne like a skin, bladder,  
or caule: but of al other partes of the bo-  
dye, it may be most worthyly resembled  
to the spleane or melt in a man or beast,  
the corpulencie or thicknes whereof, is  
as much or more as the thicknes of the  
thumbe, the colour wartishe black. Of  
which colour also the blood therein con-  
teyned, is as the remayne and refuse of  
the purer, attract and drawen natural-  
lye of the Infant, by the abouenamed  
nauil vaine. So that, to be short, Chorion  
is the immediat receptacle and receauer  
of al the baynes and artires, to be deduc-  
ted from the Matrix to the chyld, and  
the chyld receaueth only at his hande  
the two baynes and Artires, whiche  
by the way as they passe & pearse tho-  
row the other two calles, towarde the  
chyldes Nauill, they sende into eche of  
the

the caules innumerable small eye baynes and artypres, whereby the caules be susteyned, and encreased also.

The Termes then which were wont at other times to sturre theselues in the Matrix baynes, and at certayne circuites to issue forth: Nowe when there is a feature or chylde in the same Matrix conceaued, they proceede no more forth (as superfluous) but remaine and be referred to the necessarie nutriment of the feature, and some part therof reflueth & is reuerted to the womens brestes, there to become mylke, as shalbe sayde in the next Chapter. And nowe hath nature her purpose wherfore she made and created this course of blood, as hath been written sufficiently in the Chap. before.

But here ye shall note, that they be greatly deceaued and abused, which call the Termes the womans purgation, or the cleansyng of theyr blood: as who should say that it were the refuse, drosse and byler part of the other blood remainyng in the body, naturall ye euery

Giui

moneth.

## The first booke.

The termes be  
of so hollowe  
blood as any  
other part in  
the body.

moneth sequestrate and separated from  
the purer, for the vilitie and euill quali-  
tie therein comprehended. For vnder-  
standably this blood is euen as pure and hol-  
some as all the rest of the blood in anye  
part of the body els.

The chyld be-  
ing in the wom-  
be, nourished of  
the purest  
blood.

As it to be thought, that nature would  
feede the tender & delicate Infant in the  
mothers Wombe, with the refuse of the  
blood, or not rather with the purest of  
it: Yes, and therefore for because that she  
would that the pure blood commyng  
fro the Matrix baynes shoulde be made  
yet purer, she suffereth not the same to  
enter immediately into the Infant, but  
first vseth another meane, and sendeth it  
into Chorion or the hoope cal (as I haue  
sayd before) where truely it hath a cer-  
tayne circulation and another digesti-  
on, wherby it is defecate, and clen-  
sed very exquisitely, by the diligence of nature  
attenuated and fined, and so at the laste  
sent forth into the Infant, leauyng all  
the grosser part in the spongy bodye of  
the hoope caule.

Yet



Yet much more are to be detested and  
 abhorred the shamefull lyes and slaunder  
 der that Plinie, Albertus magnus de secretis <sup>slaunder of</sup>  
 mulierum, & diuers other mo haue wyte- <sup>the termes.</sup>  
 ten of the venemous and dangerous  
 infectiue nature of the womans flowres  
 or termes, the which all be but dreames  
 and playne dotage. To rehearse theyr  
 fond wordes here were but losse of inke  
 & paper, wherefore let them passe with  
 theyr aucthors.

Which of the thre Matrix baynes conteyne the  
 termes, and how the pylke cometh  
 to the womans breistes.

Cap. xv.



**M**Shewed you here  
 before, that to thre  
 different partes &  
 regids of the Ma-  
 trix, there resorted  
 from thre different  
 partes of vena cava,  
 thre sundrie bayne  
 slips. Nowe whe-  
 che of these slips shoulde bring the  
 blood

The first booke.

blood called the Termes into the Mat-  
rix, or from which of them the termes  
shoulde proceede, it is harde clearly to  
discusse, but onely by lykely coniectures.  
And yet it is a thyng very necessarye to  
be knowen, for the redyer aduertise-  
ment howe medicines for that purpose  
shoulde be applyed in that place, when  
neede shoulde be, eyther to prouoke the  
Termes by some casualtie stopped, or  
els contrary to restrayne them immod-  
erately flowyng. For yf the bottome  
baynes of the Matrix do contayne only  
the Termes, then shoulde any medicine  
conueyed vnderneath profite nothyng,  
except it be conueyed so farre by, that it  
may attayne within the holownesse  
of the Matrix, the whiche is verye  
lytle when the woman is not with  
chylde.

Agayne, yf the necke baynes of the  
Matrix do only contayne these termes,  
then needed medicines to be applyed no  
farther then to that place. As for the  
third Matrix baynes, there is none  
that

that doth once suspecte the Termes to  
proceede from them : But manye there  
be, which do suppose the termes to issue  
both at the necke baynes, and at the bot-  
tome baynes also, but most notably at  
the necke baynes, for because (say they)  
that these baynes do appeare more con-  
spicuous and notable to the eyes when  
a woman is cut open, then do the bot-  
tome baynes, which may be very skant-  
ly perceaved: Wherfore they thinke that  
these necke baynes shoulde be the grea-  
ter stirrer of Termes.

Agayne (say they) we see many tymes  
that after the woman is conceaued, yet  
doth there issue termes tyl the thirde or  
fourth, yea sometymes the fyfth mo-  
neth, the whiche now at this tyme can  
not proceede out of the Matric: for the  
port or mouth therof, according to au-  
thours opinions, is so closed after the  
seede conceaued, that the point of a nee-  
dle can not enter but by violence and  
force. Wherfore they conclude, that the  
Termes at this tyme muste needes  
spring

The first booke.

spring out of the necke bayne, and not out of the bottome baynes.

To those I aunswere, that both at this tyme and at all other tymes, the Termes issue onely out of the bottome baynes, & out of such of the necke baynes as spreade them selues onely within the Matric, as may be seene in the figure. For insomuche as nature dyd create the course of Termes for no other cause, but onely to be a preast and redye foode at all tymes to the feature conceaued, to what purpose shoulde the Termes in the necke baynes of the Matric serue, where there can neuer be any conception, neither the seede there can remayne: And as concerning the issuing of the Termes after conception, I say that the port of the Matric is neuer so exactly close, but that such a liquid thing as blood is, may thrill and coole out of it, yea although (as they say) the poynt of a needle can not enter in thereat. For ye may see, that betweene the chynes and chynkes of closeiye toynd boordes, the

the poynt of a needle will not easily enter, yet water or any other liquid thing, may passe through without lette, and euen so is it in the Matrice.

And yet for all this, it shal not folowe that the seede should passe out thereat, as well as the blood, for the seede is of a more fast, compacte, and stedfast substance. And besydes this, by that tyme that the seede hath ben but a daye or two in the Matrice, it waxeth yet more stable and stedfast, by the natural heate of the place, yea and is compassed with a thynne ryme, as a tender egge is vnder the shell, wherefore it will not so soone issue out of the matrix without great iniurie.

Here agayne ye shall note the cause why that Physicians do counsell women which be desirous to conceaue, and can not for lubricitie, moystnes, or waterynes of the matrix (whereby the attractive and attentive power of the Matrice is debilitat and weakened) to take fumes & vapours vnderneath, or other  
medic

The first booke.

medicines at the mouth to dry the said humidities, immediately after the Termes be passed, and not vppon the conuynng of them: for if the woman should be conceaued vpon the conuynng of the sayde Termes, then woulde they conuynge them self with the seede, before the seede haue gotten yet any perfect ryme or caule, whereby the seede shoulde become the thinner, and be made fluy, and so to passe forth agayne out of the Matrix, washed out with the Termes.

But immediately after that the Termes be passed, if the seede be conceaued; then shall it haue sufficient tyme to get a strong ryme or caule ouer it, before the Termes come agayne. And agayne, whyles the little speckes or mouthes of the matrix baines be yet open, after the letting forth of the Termes, they shall be the more apt to cleaue and to ioyn the selues with the feature, by meanes of calues wherein the feature is inuolued, and cheefely of Chorion, named the hoope caule, as hath ben sufficientlye sayde

sayde here before.

Yet when the seede hath ben three or  
foure wekes in the wombe, it is not of  
sufficient quantitie to consume into his  
nutriment all the blood that was wont  
to resorte into the Matrix. vaines, wher-  
fore the first, second, yea & third month,  
sometymes at the womans wont time  
of termes, there issueth and sheweth  
some blood more or lesse: the more in the  
whiche were wont at other tymes to  
haue abundaunce of them. &c. And ye  
shal note, that when the child is concey-  
ued, & that the caule Choriō, is fastened &  
basted to the matrix by the vaines ther-  
of, yet do not al the vaines of the matrix  
attaine to the said Choriō, but a certaine,  
so far as Choriō doth reach: howbeit the  
larger that Choriō groweth with the child,  
the mo vaines doth he couer. wherfore  
fro those baynes that be not yet affixed  
vnto Choriō, do the termes flow at this  
time: but whē the child beginneth once  
to come to a greater perfectiō & grow-  
eth, then is al the terme blood reserved

in:



## The first booke.

in the Matrix, as litle y enough to satisfie the childe, and then also part thereof mounteth by into the brestes, & becometh milk, as shalbe sayde hereafter.

Yet agayne to confyrme myne opinion, that the Termes dos only issue out of the pante of the Matrix: We shal vnderstand, that at sundry tymes I haue had two diuers women in cure, the one in London, and the other in Paris: Of which, the one by a fall of her horse, the other by a violent thrust and squat on the buttockes vpon the harde stones in the streete, being both neare the time of theyr purgation, chaunced also both of them into one maner of disease (that is to say) immediatlye here vppon theyr Termes dyd issue, and so continued dayly, to the one of them, the space of half a yere, & to the other a whole yere: so that after that time the Termes staid agayne, and issued no more dayly as before, but once in foure wekes, at what time they voided great lumps, takes, or cloddes of blood, congealed together  
euen

even like the lyuer of a beast. And in the meane time, betweene eche voyding of these lumps of blood (whiche as I haue sayde come to passe once in foure weekes) every day continually appeared and issued their whyte flowres (as they named it.)

Nowe to declare the perticuler occasions of this manner of voydng of the termes, ye shall vnderstand, that by the force of the fall and squar, the Matric baynes brake, and that so muche the more promptly, that they were the fuller of blood, and that nearer their tyme of purgation, vpon which bracke, the blood dayly issued after ward, whereby the vigour & kinde heate of the matric, by litle and litle decreased and decayed, frigiditie and coldnesse succeeded. By whiche occasion also the mouth or pore of the matric, wared the more contract and narrower, for cold closeth, knytteth, & conicaleth. Hereto helpeth also not a litle the great vse of cold binding medicines, which eche of them dyd apply to

H. I.

this

The first booke.

this place at the simple counsaile of ignorant persons.

The port then of the Matrix by this occasion closed & contracted, the blood went alwayes daily to procede, remaineth within the Matrix, where as fast as it droppeth and cooleth out of the baynes, it coniealeth and cluddereth together, like as ye may see, that when a man is let blood in a basin or other vessel. and that the blood stande styll in it the space of. v. or. vi. houres, it wyll be concret and coniealed in a cludder like a hyer, the watery part thereof swimming and flitting above vpon the face of it: and euen so is it of the blood coniealed in the matrix, so that when there is so much of this coniealed blood conueyned together in the said matrix, that it can not contayne it any longer, then violently and perforce it issueth out together, with farre greater peril, danger, and dolour to the woman, then though she laboured with a chylde.

The whyte flowres that issued, during

ring the time that this blood gathered in the Matrix, was (no doubt) the very Watery the part that flected When the blood coniealed, for that Water can neuer conieale as the blood doth: Wherefore enery day as fast as the blood dyd conieale in the Matrix, so fast also dyd the Water separate it selfe from the blood, and so issued.

Notwithstanding, I am not ignozant that the very White floures in seede do proceede from the seede carriers, into the angles or corners of the Matrix, and so fro thence outwarde, the which diseale also men haue many times. And it cometh either of the abundance of flegme in the body, or of the corruption & euill qualitie mixed in the seede. &c.

These examples as I suppose, may be sufficient evidences, that the Termes spring alwayes fro within the matrix, & not from any part of the necke therof.

Item, I haue senediuers other womē, in Whom their termes haue stayed the space of. vi. viij. & x. weekes, where with

H. ii.

their

## The first booke.

their bellies haue encreased and wared bigger, so that they haue thought themselves to be with chylde: Notwithstanding, at the last haue voyded such lyke lumpes of blood, as I haue spoken of here before, not without great peryll and daunger to them in the voydyng, wherewithal their bellies haue relaxed and decreased againe. And thus I make an ende to talke any more of the nature & course of the termes: and now wil I declare somewhat of the conueyaunce and course of the mylke into the womans brestes: for there is great affinitye, communitie, and familiaritie betweene the Matrix & the brestes, whiche naturally do perceyue and feele, anon when the matrix hath conceived, and then begin they to breue & to make redy theyr part, agaynst the tyme that the Matrix hath all done her part, that is, agaynst the chylde be borne. The mylke whiche cometh to the brestes, is engendred of the Termes (according to the most mens opinions.)

But

But to knowe which way the sayde  
 Termes should attayne from the Ma-  
 trix to the brestes, ye shall vnderstande,  
 that the vppermost and greatest bayne  
 of the seconde diuision, spoken of in the  
 xiiij. chap. where it attayneth the hockle  
 bone, redy to passe out of the holonette  
 of the belly into the thygh, before that it  
 perse the kel called Peritonœum, it sendeth  
 forth a notable bayne branche, which  
 from hence mounteth vpwarde along  
 the belly betweene the ryght Muscle &  
 the ouerthwart, til it come a litle aboue  
 the navel, where the extreame or vpper  
 ende thereof diuideth it selfe in many  
 folde lytle braunches, meetyng and en-  
 termynglyng them selues with the ex-  
 treame lytle branches or flappes of ano-  
 ther lyke bayne, descending from the  
 vppermost chestbone, downe along the  
 insyde of the chest, and the insyde of the  
 vpper parte of the belly, butyll it meete  
 with the foresayd mountyng bayne, a  
 litle aboue the Navel.

And ye shall note, that this bayne

H. iij.

branch

branch proceeding from vena cava, at the  
 hyghest che rebone downewarde along  
 the inner side of the chest or brest, by the  
 way as it passeth, it yeeldeth certayne  
 litle lippes & small branches of itselfe,  
 betwixt the rybbes into the brestes.  
 wherof the consent of all aucthours  
 is, that by the meanes of these descen-  
 dyng wayne branches at both sydes of  
 the body, & the other ascendyng wayne  
 branches on both sides of the belly, there  
 shoulde be great communite & felow-  
 shipp betweene the brestes in women,  
 and the Matric or the wombe.

For doubtesse by common experience,  
 ye may see that whē the tyme of concep-  
 tion in women is, & that by this meanes  
 the termes be stopped, then as the ter-  
 mes do deminish & waxe lesse, so doth  
 the mylke in the brestes encrease and  
 waxe euery day more & more, as who  
 might say that the superfluite of blood,  
 wout at other tymes to voyde in the  
 name of Termes, now at this tyme by  
 the prouidence & prouision of Nature, is  
 retay-



retayned as no superfluitie, but rather  
 a necessary humour, reuered and desti-  
 nate an other way; that is to say, sent  
 from the vaines of the Matric, part  
 thereof bywarde, by the forenamed as-  
 cendyng vayne branches; at these stan-  
 des agayne receyued and naturally at-  
 tracted by the other descendyng vesse-  
 l vaines, through whom it is carped in-  
 to the brestes. Where by naturall  
 circulations it is digested into white  
 milke, being before red blood, ready  
 prepared to nouryſhe the chyld. When  
 nature shall sende it to the waddel or  
 Agayne, so long as the woman ge-  
 ueth sucke to the chyld, a back sort of  
 milke in her brestes, her teares be of  
 very litle or no quantitie. Whiche be evi-  
 dences that there should be great simi-  
 lilitie betwene the Matric and the  
 brestes, for so much as the ebbing of the  
 one is the flowing of the other: where-  
 fore whilſt ſometimes. When the  
 floures illne more vehemently then ac-  
 ceth, they sitte byng glasses under the  
 brestes,

brestes, meaning thereby to reuert and  
 retorne bpwarde, the matter enclined  
 to much downeward: the which prac-  
 tise how much it preuaileth, I Wyl not  
 here dispute. Yet in this matter to dis-  
 cuss the very veritie as neare as reason  
 and the knowledge of Anatomie Wyl  
 geue leaue, ye shal not vnderstande my  
 sayloges that I should meane that al-  
 waies when the termes stop beneath  
 by any colde, thought, or other occasi-  
 ons, by and by the same blood to stye  
 and mount bp into the brestes, & there  
 to be borne mythe, for the contrary here-  
 of is daily seene. For most commonly  
 they in whom these termes do stop, for  
 any other cause then conception, the su-  
 perfluous blood reapted in the body,  
 and in the waynes wandring, causeth  
 to the partie great heauynesse, taketh a  
 way their stomackes, and engendreth di-  
 uers other inconueniences, notwithstanding  
 the nature wherof there any thing the  
 more in like in the brestes.  
 Wherefore ye may say, that the  
 cause

cause of plentie of milke in the womans  
brestes in time of her being with chyld,  
and much more afterwarde, commeth  
chiefely by a prime naturall instinction,  
whereby it is geuen vnto the brestes at  
that tyme more then at any other; to  
drawe vnto it selfe greater abundance  
of blood, conuerting and altering the  
same by the propertie of the place, into  
conuenient mylke.

It is not a sufficient cause to replenish  
the brest the Lacties to be by any occa-  
sion stopped beneath, but there must al-  
so concurre the attractive power, inset  
in the brestes to drawe the sayde blood  
(matter at other times of the Lacties)  
without which attraction, be the Lac-  
ties neuer so long stopped, yet shall the  
brestes be nothing the fuller, if it chanced  
that this attractive power halte, or be  
not able to attract sufficient matter to  
make mylke vpon for the Infant: then  
Medicines are wont to helpe the debi-  
litie of nature, with cuppynge glasses set  
vpon, or vnder the brestes, or els with  
gentle

## The first booke.

gentle attractive emplaisters applied to the same places.

And although that into the brestes do resort great store of other baynes, some descending from the baynes of the shoulders, and other some from the baynes passing by the armeholes into the armes and handes, the which in moyses and notable byggesse, much surmount the quantitie of the abourenamed descending brest baynes, as it may appeare evidently in many women which haue these baynes appearing in the superficie of their brestes immediately vnder the skin, very conspicuous & sightfull: yet notwithstanding it is thought by strong coniectures, that the mylke in the brestes should be engendred only vpon the blood mounting from the aforesayde ascending Matrit baynes, and not vpon the blood conteyned in the other baynes, howe conspicuous so euer they be, so that the blood in them comprehended, serueth only to the nourishment of the substance of the brestes.

bestes them selues, & not to the maintenance of the mylke.

To declare here curiously the maner that nature vseth in circulatynge of the attracted blood, whereby alteration is made from one coloure to another, woulde require a longer processe, the which for breuitie we wyll omit at this tyme. With many other problemes, doubtles, and difficulties concernynge the same. And so we make an ende of this fyrst booke.

## The first booke.

The declaration by letters of the Figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye, every part in woman, mentioned in this booke before: Which in the former printings hath been corrupted, but now truly set forth.

The first Figure of the partes of women, with the declaration and karacters of the same.



In this first figure is set forth the tronke or stocke of a womans body layde on the groumbe, whose Peritoneum is opened with the muscles of the Abdomen, and turned ouer towarde the insyde, accordyng to the vse of cutting, and after ward we haue cut away all the bowels or entrayles from Mesenterium, the strayght entrayle beyng yet left in the body, with also the whole Mesenterium, whose pannels we haue here somewhat taken away, and set a portion from the other, that the nature of Mesenterium myght come to lycht, but this present figure is for this cause principally declared and set forth, that it might so shew the position of the Matrix or wombe, and the Bladder, as in this woman it is seene, no part of the said Matrix or wombe being moued.

For here is as yet no pannicle pluckt away from the Matrix or wombe, but that all thynges are here yet wholly seene, lyke wyse as in women  
Some

some what fat they do appeare to the cutter, the bowels being taken away. For women are so fatte, that when they be bered and kylled with long sicknesse, and become most leanest, then they shewe no kynde of procelle of vessels, but lesse the pannicles or thynne coueringes be separated asunder.

A.B.C.D. The inner face or part of the former seate of Peritoncum,

EE. A part of Mesenterium, knittynge the thynne intrayles to the backe.

FF. Here is noted another pannicle of Mesenterium, plucked from the other which we haue marked with G and G. But both the pannicles do shewe the order of the vessels of Mesenterium, and order of the karnels put betweene the distributions of the vessels.

HH. In this part of Mesenterium, the entrayle Colon was committed and set to, where it was nyghest to the strayght gut.

I. And in this part of Mesenterium, dyd consyst and stande the beginning of the intrasse Colon, or his continuance with the thynne intrayles, and also the blynde gut.

K. The strayght gut being there cut of where Colon dyd ende, whiche seate or place is ryght agaynst the place of the knittynge together of the hocke bone, with the lowest turning ioynt of the loynes.

L. The former seate of the bottome of the matrix, from whence is nothyng perceiued pluckt away.

M. The right stone or testicle in a woman.

N. The



## The first booke.

N. The left stone of a woman, and the former part of this is here entirely seene, although there be of the ryght but a small portion perceiued; and it is for this cause that we haue in such manner set forth the ryght stone: for both the testicles are couered with a pannicle, whiche pannicle byingeth downe the seede vesselles of a woman, which do spring from Peritoneum: but we haue vncouered the left testicle of that pannicle, with the hande onely without any knyfe, leauyng the ryght as you see. For this pannicle doth not growe to the former seate of the testicle in any part thereof, but lyeth there onely.

O. A pannicle springing and growyng forth from the right seate of Peritoneum, and committynge the ryght testicle with the seede vesselles on this syde, and those vesselles whiche insolde the hygher seate of the Matrix to the backe, conteinynge together the Matrix or wombe, and afterward with the pannicle of the other syde, constitutyng the second coate of the Matrix.

P. This way in the foresayde pannicle, runne forth fleshy fybres or thynne skynnes, constitutyng the ryght Huske of the Matrix, or Wombe.

Q. With these characters, the pannicle of the left syde is noted, whiche is correspondent and like to that pannicle, which the foresaid Q. did point to.

R. S. The former part of the necke of the Matrix, couered as yet, betweene R and S with that cote, which

which the partes of Peritoneum offer vnto it: which bryng forth vessels vnto it, and from it, and do knit it to Peritoneum: but the space being betweene R and S, doth shewe the largenesse of the necke of the Matrix. And the wrindles which are seene here, are they which the necke of the Matrix fallng into it selfe, not stretched forth agayne, doth shew in the cuttyng.

T. The bladder whose hinder part is here chiefe-ly seene, for we haue so cast our eye in the declaration and setting forth of this figure, as though we woulde principally beholde in the body beyng prostrate and layde along, the hinder seate of the bladder, whiche looketh towarde the Matrix.

For yf ye will suppose and imagine this body of a woman, to be set byrght, as that whiche next foloweth, ye shoulde thinke other wise then the thyng is, that the bottome of the Matrix is set forth much higher then the bladder.

V. This is a portion of the Pauell, deliuered in the cuttyng from Peritoneum, and turned ouer togeather with the vesselles seruyng properly to the chyld.

X. A portion of a bayne goyng from the Pauell to the lyuer.

Y. A way goyng from the hyghest seate or place of the bottome of the bladder, pertaynyng vnto the Pauell, and bryngyng from thence the brine of the chyld, betweene his seconde and the innermost infolder.

Ket &. Shewe

## The first booke.

Let & shewe two artyzes creeping forth hither from the Pauell, by the sydes of the bladder, and graft in or continued in this place, to the branches of the great artire, going principally to the holes of the bones about the priuie members.

The declaration of the seconde Figure of the members of women, and of the karacters of the same.



We haue here taken away the skin fro the right teate of this present figure, that the nature of the teates myght, as nigh as may be, be set before the eyes: afterward we haue cutte away the ventricle with the bowels, and also Mesenterium and the splene, leauyng the strayght entrayle in this place vnnedled with, as well as we did in the figure before. And moreover, we haue as it were, taken away from the uttermost coate whiche Peritoncum gaue vnto it, cuttyng away also all the pannicles, that the vessels carryng forth the substance and matter of seede to the stones, and also the vesselles carryng away the seede from thence to the Matrix, shoulde appeare and be seene. Also we haue turned ouer the bladder downewarde on the leste syde, lyke wyle breaking

breaking the way or conduite which beareth forth the brine to it from the ryght hydney, that the insertion of the wayes of bearyng forth the brine to the bladder myght appeare, and that the bladder should not let the inspection or sight of the Matrix or wombe. Last of all, we haue cutte away from this figure a portion of the bones about the priuy members, that the neckes of the Matrix & of the bladder myght the more commodiously be seene.

AA. Waynes runnyng forth ostentymes to the teates, from those wayes whiche are offered to the skynne, whiche is brought ouer the heygth of the shoulder.

B. Waynes sprynging from those baynes which are led forth by the arme hole to the hand.

C. The principall body of the teate.

DD. Kernels and fatnesse spread abroade euery where on the karnelly body, marked with C.

EFGH. The hynder outsyde or insyde of the former seate of Peritoneum outwarde. For the former region of Peritoneum is here bowed upward and downeward toward the syde.

IK. Portions of wayues and also Artyres, creapyng forth downeward, vnder the brest bone from the throte.

L. The gybositye or swellng seate of the lyuer.

M. The hold or part of the liuer is here also somewhat seene.

N. A small portion or peece of the wayne goyng from the Hauell to the lyuer.

O. The stocke of vena porta is here cut away,

3. i.

with

## The first booke.

with the vesselles brought vnto it.

P. The holowe bayne.

Q. The great artyze.

R. The rootes of the artyzes goyng to the ventricule, the lyuer, the spleane, the caule, and to the bowelles.

S. The begynnyng of a bayne infoldyng the fat coate of the left kydney.

T. The bayne and artyze whiche bryngeth the whayse humour to the ryght kydney.

V. The bayne and artyze whiche bryngeth the whayse humour into the left kydney.

X. The begynnyng of the bayne goyng into the fatte coate of the ryght kydney.

Y. The former seate of the ryght kydney.

Z. The former seate of the left kydney.

aa. The way that bryngeth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder, but at the neather murther, a is broken away, but the portion that is left of this way, and is continued to the bladder, marked with b.

b. The way that carryeth forth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder.

cc. The way that carryeth forth the brine from the left kydney into the bladder.

dd. The ryght seede bayne, whose begynnyng the hygher d doth shewe.

e. The seede bayne goyng to the left testicle.

f. The sprynging forth of the artyzes of seede.

g. The ryght seede artyze.

h. The left seede artyze.

ikl. The former part of the bottome of the Matrice,

trix, and i sheweth the ryght blunt angle oꝝ corner of the sayde bottoime, where k sheweth the left, but l sheweth the region oꝝ place of the matrix, where the mouth of his bottoime consisteth, and where his necke beginneth.

m. This is the strayght gut. And that I may the lesse burden both the sydes of this figure with many letters, I wyll at this present affixe the Characters but on the one syde onely.

n. A portion of the bayne and artyre of seede, whiche do go to the bypper syde of the bottoime of the wombe.

o. Portion of the baynes and artyre of seede goyng to the testicle, and there ioyning and goyng together, and constitutyng.

p. A body lyke the spire of a steeple, and this letter p doth poynt vs the roote oꝝ foundation of this body, whereas the sayd roote oꝝ foundation is committed and ioyned to the testicle.

q. From that sayd body such vessels runne forth into the tunicles, committynge and ioyning the testicle to Peritoncum.

r. The former face oꝝ part of the testicle.

s. The begynnyng of the vessel whiche beareth forth the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

tt. The bowinges and turnynges ouer agayne of the vessel whiche beareth forth the seede, which turnynges the sayd vessel maketh round about the sydes of the testicle.

v. The goyng forth of the vessel which carryeth forth the seede of the Matrix.

I. ii.

xx. The

## The first booke.

xx. The necke of the Matrix.

y. vessels foldyng in the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix or wombe, and the necke also of the same.

z. A bayne commyng from those vessels to the bladder, which vessels do folde and wynde in the necke of the Matrix, and this Character also noteth the insertion of the wayes of the brine.

μβ The hynder seate of the bottome of the bladder.

γ The Muskle of the necke of the bladder.

α In this seate the necke of the bladder is implanted into the necke of the Matrix.

ι Small skinnie portions of fleshe of the necke of the mouth or openyng of the wombe or Matrix, and the small hylockes of the Matrix, with the mouth or openyng of the necke thereof, neede here no speciall declaration with Characters.

ζ The roote of the Artire, going into the lowest part of Mesenterium.

α vessels which do ascende and ryle bpward to the muskles of the Abdomen, from the waynes and Artires which do go into the legges.

¶ The declaration of the Characters of the thyrd Figure of women.



His present figure sheweth the matrix or wombe, with the thynne couerynges which do bynde it to Peritoncum, cut forth from the body and the



the necke thereof is here so folded together, and turned ouer, that the mouth or opening of the bottome of the Matrix doth here manifestly shewe it selfe. And we haue likewise so opened the bottome and the necke of the bladder, that the holownesse of the same, with the insertion of the wayes of brine, are here manifestly seene.

A. The former face of the bottome of the Matrix, being not yet vncouered of any pannicle.

BB. The necke of the Matrix.

C. A part of the bottome of the Matrix, swelling forth into the upper seate of the necke of the Matrix, in manner of a hernell.

D. The mouth of the bottome of the Matrix.

EE. A pannicle knittying the Matrix to Peritoneum, and conternyng his vesselles.

F. The left testicle of the Matrix.

G. The bayne and artire of seede.

H. Portion of the seede bayne and artyre, conmyng to the upper seate of the bottome of the Matrix.

I. A portion of the seede bayne and artyre conmyng to the testicle.

K. The vessell caryng the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

L. The holownesse of the bladder.

M. The insertion of the wayes of the brine.

N. Here hangeth forth a litle peece of the wayes of the brine.

## The first booke.

The declaration of the Characters of the  
fourth Table of Anatomie.



All branches running forth  
into the pannicle, where they  
are committed and ioyned to  
Peritonæum.

A portion of the Uterine and  
arterie going into the testicle,  
falling to the upper seate of the bottome of the  
Matrix.

The commition and going together of the  
seede bayne and arte, that is like the spire of  
a steeple, whiche we lyken to the braded baynes  
called Varices.

The left testicle.

The vessel carrying forth the seede from the  
testicle into the Matrix.

The blunt angle or corner of the bottome of  
the Matrix, in whom the vessel that bringeth  
forth the seede attempteth his insertion.

In this seate the bottome of the Matrix is  
ended into the necke thereof, and in this region  
or place is the beginning of the mouth or ope-  
nyng place thereof.

The necke of the Matrix or wombe.

Here the necke of the bladder is brought forth  
into the necke of the Matrix, and there endeth.

Those are vessels infolding the nether seate of  
the bottome of the Matrix, and also his necke.

The swelling bynames at the mouth of the  
necke of the Matrix.

The

vv The wayes that bring the urine from the  
sapiens into the bladder.

The declaration of the Characters of the .d. xl.  
bif. and. viii. Figures.



W e have now divided  
this fyfth table of the  
wombe of Matrix,  
concernyng a male  
chylde on the former  
fyde, with a long sec-  
tion of cut, and ano-  
ther which are ouer-  
thwart fyfte, remo-  
uyng and takyng a-  
way, into the fydes,  
partes of the coates of the bottome of the Ma-  
trix, yea, even from the vttermoſt infolder of the  
chylde.

A B C D. The inner fyde of the ſayd infolder of  
the Matrix, whiche before the ſection was  
brought about and couered with the infolders  
of the chylde.

E. The vtter ſide of the Matrix, and the hygh-  
er E noteth the top of the right angle. or corner  
of the Matrix, brought forth by ward & toward  
the right ſide, more then toward the left, becauſe  
it is a male chylde which is in the wombe.

F. The fyſt of the vttermoſt infolder of the  
chylde.

G G. The ſeconde infolder of the chylde is here

J. iiii.

allo

# The first booke.

also a great part seene.

H. A part of the necke of the **M**atrix, to whom in the other syde we haue left groweing to it a bayne and an artire, whiche is principally distributed into the lower scale of the bottome of the **M**atrix.

I. Here is also yett left the right testide, that the situation of it myght be seene and perceived in women being with chylde.

**C** The first Table sheweth the infolders of the chylde, taken whole away from the **M**atrix, and not broken.

K. **T**he uttermoste infolder of the chylde.

L. The seconde infolder of the chylde, which forsomuch as it is transpernaunt in maner of a pannicle, it suffereth the chylde (be wrapt within this third infolder) in it somewhat to be seene.

In the seventh Table we haue diuided the utter and the seconde infolder of the chylde, with a long section or cutte, and we haue here exprest and shewed forth both the said infolders, taken away from the third infolder, and the third infolder also yett whole.

MM. The thyrde or the innermost infolder of the chylde, whiche because it is so thynne that one may easily see through it, the fourme of the chylde lying therein, somewhat sheweth hym selfe to the eyes.

N. The

N. The proceeding or order of waynes and Ar-  
tires going to the Hauell from the first infol-  
der of the chyde.

OPOP. The seconde infolder of the chyde.

And O O. shewe his insyde, where PP. sheweth  
his viter syde.

QR. The first infolder of the chyde, where Q  
noteth the outsyde, and R. the insyde, but the  
proceedyng and order of the vesselles by the se-  
conde and the thyrde infolder, are perfectly kno-  
wen without any helpe of the Characters.



And the eighth Table expresth the  
chyde deliuered from al his coates,  
and so it sheweth hym lying, by the  
wonderfull prouidence of nature,  
not as the common opinion of the  
bulgar sort of wyters assymeth, but as you  
may here see in these figures, & so doth it lye in  
the middest of the wombe. For it is most vntrue  
that the chyde doth lye in the wombe rounde,  
lyke as it were bowed, so that the knees shoulde  
touch to the face, but as he is set here in the. viii.  
figure. And obseruyng this true situation of  
hym, you shall fynde commonly none other situ-  
ation of the chyde, nor ioyning of any ioynt of  
hym therein then is here exprest.

But in this figure M M N O P O P Q & R. do  
note the same as in the seventh Table, saue  
that M and M do shewe the insyde, or inner part  
of the thyrde infolder. But S sheweth here pri-  
uately the goyng forth of the vesselles of the  
Hauell.

## The first booke.

**N**auell, which is betweene the Nauell and the  
 fornyng together of the bellis with the chyldre  
 insolder, whiche is also brought forth with a  
 great space betweene the shewing, where be  
 certayne (as it were) knottes or swellinges, ac-  
 cording to the number of the which knottes  
 more or lesse, Whed wyues foolyshly do prophesie  
 eyther fewe or many chyldren to the woman,  
 which of the learned men is taken but for a very  
 fantasie, and worthy of reprehention. And more-  
 ouer, when the chyldre commeth forth (as it  
 chaunceth sometymes) hauiing that about his  
 necke, they say that it is the same chyldes desty-  
 nie to be hanged, with many other foolyshe  
 conceptes, rather to be laughed at, then to be  
 beleued.

The declaration of the Characters of the  
 ninth Figure of women.



**A**D the ninth figure sheweth  
 the Matric cut forth of the bo-  
 dy, beyng of that bygnesse as it  
 was scene taken forth of a wo-  
 man at the laste Anatomie  
 which I did see at the vniuersitie  
 of Padua in Italie. And moreover we haue to  
 diuided and cutte asunder the bottome of the  
 Matric by the myddle, that the conceaultie and  
 hollowe brought within the same myght be  
 perceyued, and the thicke substance also of  
 both the coates of the Matric in women, wher  
 they

they be with chyld.

AABB. The concavittie and holowe bough of the bottome of the Matrix.

CD. A line somewhat after the maner of a seame called in Latine Scortum, which doth belong to the place wherein the testicle doth lye, whiche swelleth somewhat forth into the bough of the bottome of the Matrix.

EE. The thicknesse of the inner and proper coate of the bottome of the Matrix.

FF. A portion of the innermost bottome of the Matrix swelling forth downe warde from the higher seat of the Matrix, into the holownesse and bough of the bottome.

GG. The begynnyng of the necke or openyng place of the bottome of the Matrix.

HH. The second or uttermost infolder of the bottome of the matrix, descended from Peritoneum.

II. Here we have reserved a portion on both the sides of the thirre couerynge, descended from Peritoneum, and conteynyng the Matrix.

K. Here is also seene the substance of the necke of the Matrix, because the cuttyng wherewith we divided the bottome of the Matrix, was begun at this place.

L. A part of the necke of the bladder, implanted into the necke of the Matrix, casting forth into it the brine. The swelling partes of Abdomen, and whatsoeuer is els to be considered thereof, they may be sufficiently knownen without direction of Characters.

FINIS.



## The second booke.

Of the tyme of birth. And which is  
called naturall or unnaturall.

### Cap. i.



In the first booke we haue  
sufficiently set forth and  
described the maner, situa-  
tion, & fourme of the Ma-  
tric wherein man is con-  
teined, With dyuers other matters ap-  
pending and concerning the better un-  
derstandyng of the same. And now  
here in this second Booke, we wyll de-  
clare the maner of the quytting and de-  
lyuerant: of the Infant out of the mo-  
thers wombe, With other thynges ther-  
to appertaynyng. And first here in this  
Chapter we wil declare the tokens and  
signes whereby ye may perceiue whe-  
ther the tyme of labour be neare or not:  
For when the houre of labour appro-  
cheth neare, these signes folowingeuer  
more procede and come before.

First certayne dolours and paynes be-  
gin to growe about the guttes, the na-  
uyll, and in the raynes of the backe, and  
like

Tokens to  
know when the  
tyme of deliue-  
rance is neare.

lyke wyse about the thyghes, and the other places beyng neare to the priue partes, which lyke wyse then beginneth to swell and to burne, and to expell humours, so that it geueth a playne & euident token that the labour is neere.

But ye shall note, that there is two Two sortes of deliuerance. manner of byrthes, the one called naturall, the other not naturall. Naturall byrth is, when the chylde is borne both in due season, and also in due fashon.

The due season is most commonly after the nynty moneth, or about fourtie weekes after the conception, although some be deliuered sometimes in the seuenth moneth, and the chylde proueth very well. But such as are borne in the eight moneth, other they be dead before the byrth, or els liue not long after.

The due fashon of birth is this: first The due fashon of byrth. the head commeth forwarde, then foloweth the necke & shoulders, the armes with the handes lying close to the body towarde the feete, the face and forepart of the chylde beyng towarde the face and

## The second booke.

and forepart of the mother, as it appeareth in the fyrst of the byrth Figures. For as hath been sayde alreedy in the fyrst Booke, before the tyme of deliuerance, the chylde lyeth in the mothers wombe the head vpward, and the feete downewarde, but when it shoulde be deliuered, it is turned cleane contrary, the head downewarde, the feete vpward, and the face towarde the mothers belly, and that yf the byrth be naturall. Another thyng also is this, that yf the byrth be naturall, the deliuerance is easie without long taryng or loking for it.

The byrth not naturall is, when the mother is deliuered before her time, or out of due season, or after any other fashyon then is here spoken of before: As when both the legges proceede first, or one alone, with both the handes vp, or both downe, other els the one vp and the other downe, & dyuers other wyse, as shalbe hereafter more clearly declared.

Of

Ofealie and breasie, difficult, or dolourous  
 delyueraunce, and the causes of it: With  
 the signes howe to knowe  
 and foresee the same.  
 Cap. ii.



Very many be the perylles,  
 daungers, and thronges,  
 which chaunce to women  
 in their labour, which also  
 ensue and come in dyuers  
 wayes, and for diuers causes, suche as  
 I shall here declare.

Many peryls  
 chauncing to  
 women in their  
 labour.

Fyrst When the woman that labour-  
 reth is conceaued ouer young, as before  
 xii. or. xv. yeeres of age (whiche chaun-  
 ceth sometyme, though not very often)  
 and that the passage be ouer anguste,  
 strait, or narrowe, other naturally, or  
 els for some disease and infirmitie, whi-  
 che may happen about the parte, as  
 apostumes, pullhes, pyles, or blysters,  
 and suche other. Through the which  
 causes, nature can not (but with great  
 dolour and payne) open and dilate it  
 selfe, to the expellyng and delyueraunce  
 of

## The second booke.

of the chyld. And sometime the vesicke  
oz bladder, oz other intrayles beyng a-  
bout the Matric oz wombe, be also a-  
postumate and blystered, which beyng  
greened, the Matric oz wombe likewise  
for vicinitie and neighbourhead is gree-  
ued with them, & that hindereth great-  
lye the delyuerance. Also sometyne in  
the fundement are humorrhodes, oz  
piles, and other pushes, chappynge oz  
thynges, which cause great payne. Also  
hardnesse and difficultie oz byndyng of  
the belly, which thynges for the grieve  
and paine that ensueth of them, causeth  
the woman to haue litle power to helpe  
her selfe in her labour.

Furthermore, if the partie be weake  
and of feeble complexion, oz of nature  
very colde, oz to young, oz very aged, oz  
exceedyng grosse and fatte, oz contrary-  
wyse to spare and leane, oz that she ne-  
uer had chyld before, oz that she be ouer-  
timorous and fearefull, dyuers, way-  
warde, oz such one that wyll not be ru-  
led, remouyng her selfe from one place  
to

to another, all suche thynges causeth the labour to be muche more paynesfull, cruell, and dolorous, then it woulde o-therwyle be. Also ye must vnderstand, that generally the byrth of the man is easier then the byrth of the female.

Item, yf the chylde be of a fuller and greater groweth, then that it may easily passe that narrowe passage, or contrary- wyle yf it be so faynt, weake, and tender, that it can not turne it selfe, or doth it very slowly, or if the woman haue tivo chyl dren at once, other els that it with the whiche she laboureth, be a monster: as for example, yf it hath but one bodye & tivo heades, as appeareth in the xviij. of the byrth figures, such as of late was seene in the dominion of Werdenbergh.

Agayne, When it proceedeth not in due tyme, or after due fashion, as when it commeth forth with both feete or both knees togeather, or els with one foote onely, or with both feete downe- wardes, and both handes upwardes, other els (the whiche is most perilous)

## The second booke.

sidelong, askelonge, or backlong, other  
els (hauiing tws at a birth) both pro-  
ceede with their feete first, or one with  
his feete, and the other with his head,  
by those and dyuers other wayes the  
woman sustayneth great dolour, paine,  
and angrythe.

Item, yf the woman suffer abor-  
ment, that is to say, byring forth her  
chylde in the .iii. or .v. moneth after the  
conception, whiche is before the due  
tyme, in this case it shalbe great payne  
to her, for so muche as in that tyme, the  
porte of the wombe is so firmly and  
strongly enclosed, that diueth the point  
of a needle may enter in at it.

Also if the chylde be dead in the mothers  
belly, it is a very perillous thyng, for so  
much as it can not be easly turned, ney-  
ther can it welbe or helpe it selfe to come  
forth, or if þe chylde be sicke or weakned, so  
that it can not for feeblenes help it selfe.

To knowe  
whether the  
chylde be  
weake in the  
mothers belly.

The which thing may be foreseene &  
knownen by these tokens: If the woman  
with chylde haue been long sicke before  
her



her labour, yf she haue ben sore lasked, if  
after her conception she haue had dayly  
and brabontly her flowres, yf strayght  
after one moneth vpon the conception,  
her brestes yelde any mylke, yf the child  
sweete not, ne mooue at luche tyme as is  
conuenient for it, these be argumentes  
& tokens that it shoulde be very weake.  
26y what tokens ye shall knowe it is  
dead. I shal shewe you hereafter.

Also there is great perill in labouring,  
when the secondine or latter birth is o-  
uer firme or strong, and will not soone  
rue or breake asunder, so that the child  
may haue his easy coming forth. And  
contrarywyse, when it is ouerweake,  
sleuder, or thin, so that it breaketh asun-  
der before that the chylde be turned, or  
apt to issue forth, for then the humours  
whiche are collect & geathered together  
about this secondine or seconde byrth,  
passe away sooner then they shoulde do,  
& the birth shal lack his due humidities  
& moistures, which shoulde cause it the  
eyselyer to procede, & with lesse payne.

Perill in the  
secondine.

Excess of heate  
or cold greatly  
hyndereth the  
labour.

## THE SECOND BOOKE.

The birth also is hyndered by ouer  
much cold, or ouermuch heate: for in  
ouermuch cold, the passage and al o-  
ther powers of the labouring woman  
be contracted and made narrower, then  
they woulde otherwyle be. Lykewyle  
ouermuch heate debiliteth, weakeneth,  
and faynteth both the woman and the  
chylde, so that neyther of them in that  
case can wel weld or helpe them selues  
for fayntnesse.

And further if the woman haue bled  
to eate commonly such meate or frutes  
which do exicate or drie, and constraime  
bynde, as Medlers, Chestnuts, and  
all sowre frutes, as Crabbes, Choke-  
peres, Quinces, and suche other, with  
ouermuch ble of Mergens, and suche  
lyke sowre sautes, with Rile, Myrr, and  
many other thynges, al this shal great-  
lye hynder the byrth.

Also the ble of colde bathes after the  
fifth moneth folowing the conception,  
or to bathe in such water where Alome  
is, Iron, or Salt, or any suche thynges  
whiche

Whiche do coarcte and constrayne, or yf she haue ben ostentymes heauye and mournyng, or yll at ease, or yf she haue ben kepte ouer hungry and thurstie, or haue vsed ouer muche Watch and Wal-  
kyng: eyther if she vsed a litle before her labour thynges of great odour, smell or sauour, for suche thynges (in many mens opinions) attract and drawe bp-  
ward the mother or Matric, the which is great hyndraunce to the byrth.

Also yf the Woman feelee payne onlye in the backe and aboue the nauell, and not vnder, it is a signe of harde labour: lyke wyse if she were wont in tynes pas-  
sed to be deliuered with great payne, is an euidence and lykelyhod of great la-  
bour allwayes in the birth.

Nowe signes and tokens of an expe- tokens of easy  
deliuerance.  
dite and easye deliuerance, be suche as be contrary to all those that haue ben reharled before. As for example, when the Woman hath ben wont in tynes passed easly to be deliuered, and that in her labour she feelee but litle thronng

The second booke.

oz doloꝝ, oz though she haue great paynes, yet they remayne not still in the vpper partes, but Descende allwayes downewardes to the neather partes oz bottome of the belly.

And to be short, in all paynesfull and troubleosome labours, these signes betoken and signifie good speede and lucke in the labour: vnquietnes, muche stirring of the thvide in the mothers belly, all the thronges and paynes tomling in the forepart of the bottome of the belly, the Woman strong and nightlie of nature, such as can well and strongly helpe her selfe to the deliuerance of the birth. And agayne, euill signes be those, When she sweateth colde sweate, and that her pulces beate and labour ouer soze, and that she her selfe in the labouring faynt and swone, these be vnluckie and most fall signes.

**¶** Poore a woman with chylde shall use her selfe,  
and what remedies be for chym  
that haue hard labour.

Capt. iii.

五〇

**F**or succour and helpe them  
that are in such difficult perill  
of labour, as we haue spoken  
of before, ye muste obserue,  
kepe & marke those things that we shal  
(by the grace of God) shewe you in this  
Chapter folowynge.

First the woman with chylde muste  
kepe two diets, the one a moneth before  
her labour, the other in the very labour-  
ring. And aboue al thinges she must es-  
chue & forbear al suche occasions which  
may hynder the birth, to the vttermost  
of her powber, the whiche occasions we  
rehearsed in the Chapter before. But if  
there be any such thyng whiche can not  
be auoyded, forsomuch as it commeth  
by nature, or by long continuance; and  
custome in this case: yet ye shal vse some  
suche remedies, the whiche may some-  
what asswage it, molifie it, or make it  
more easy or tollerable, so that it hinder  
the birth so much the lesse.

But if it so be, that any infirmitie or  
disease, swelling, or other apostumatō

R iii

chaunce

How the labours  
may be made  
more easy.

## The second booke.

chaunce about the mother or the priuie part, or about the besike or bladder, as the stone, the strangury, and such lyke, the whiche thynges maye cause suche straytnes and coarctation, that vnneth without great and horrible payne, the partie can be deliuered or discharged. In these cases it behoueth such thynges to be looked vnto and cured, before the tyme of labour commeth, by the aduice of some experte Surgion.

Also if the woman be ouermuch constipat or bounde, most commonly she must vse, the moneth before her labour, suche thynges the which may lenifie, mollifie, dissolue, and lose the belly, as apples fryed with suger, taken fastyng in the mornyng, and after that a draught of pure Wyne alone, or els tempred with the iuyce of swete and very ripe apples.

Also to eat figges in the mornyng fasting, and at night, loseth well the belly. If these profite not, Cassia fistula taken iii. or. iiii. dramis one halfe houre before dyner shall lose the belly without peril.

Againe

Agayne, in this case she must refrayne from all such thynges as do harden, restrain, and constipat, as meates broyled or roasted, and ryte, hard egges, biese, chestnuttis, and all solwe frutes, and suche lyke.

Also yf farther necessitie require, she may receaue a clyster, but it must be very gentle and easye, made of a pynt of the broth of a chicken, or other tender fleshe, thereto putting so muche course suger or hony, as may make it reasonably swete, & halfe a sponesfull of whyte salt. Or for the poore woman maye be made a clyster of a pynt of water, wherein hath ben sod mallowes or holyoke, with hony and salt, as before. She may vse also some other easy and temperate purgation, to molifie and lose her withall, as Mercury sodden with flesh in potage, and diuers such other, or els a suppositor tempered with sope, larde, or the yolkes of egges.

And yf it chaunce that (the laboure drawing neare) she waxe faynt or sicke,  
lye,

Things to lose  
the belly.

Otherwise to  
comfort the  
woman in her  
laboure



## The second booke.

lye, then must ye comfort her with good comfortable meate, drynke, holssome and noble electuaries, and in this tyme must she do all such thynges the whiche can make her apte and sufficient to her labour, and to vse such thynges the which may laxe, open, and mollifie the nature and passage, so that the byrth maye the more freely procede, and that chieflly in the yonger women. The elder women, for because that those partes in them be somewhat dryer and harder, therefore they must vse hoat and moyst thynges which haue propertie to lenifie and souple, and that both in meate and drynke, and also in outwarde fomentations, bathynges, suppositoies, and annoyntmentes.

Anoyntmentes to souple.

Anoyntmentes Where with ye may souple the pryncle place, be these, Hennes grece, Duckes grece, Goose grece, also oyle Oliue, Lineseede oyle, or oyle of Fenegreke, or the viscolite of holyoke, and such other: & for drynke, let her vse good rypp wine mixed with water: also there

there muste be a consideration in the  
dieting of the woman, that she maye  
vse suche thinges the whiche may moy-  
sten her, and not make her fatte. Con-  
trarywyse, let her auoyde such thynges  
the whiche shoulde ericate, drye, con-  
strayne, or roaret her, and that all the  
moneth before her labour. But about  
ten dayes before the tyme (yf she feele a-  
nye payne or greefe) let her vse every  
day to washe or bathe her with warme  
water, in the whiche also that she tarye  
not ouerlong in bathyng for weakenyng  
of her, and therein let her stande so that  
the water come aboue the nappill a lit-  
tle, and also feathe in the water. Ma-  
lloes, Holyoke, Camomell, Mercurie,  
Maydenheyre, Lyneseede, Fenegreke  
seede, and suche other thynges whiche  
haue vertue to mollifie and soyle. And  
yf it be so, that for weakenesse of the bo-  
dy she may not endure this bathyng in  
warne water, then with a sponge  
or other cloth dypped in the foresayde  
bath, let her sokyngly washe her feete,  
her

Bathes to lase  
and gentles on  
open the body

The second booke.

her thynges, and her priuie partes, the  
whiche thynges shall greatly profite to  
her. But in suche tyme beware ye come  
not in the common hot houses, for they  
would cause you to be feeble and faynt,  
whiche were yll in this case.

And when ye are thus bathed or wa-  
shed, then shall it be very conuenient for  
you to annoynt with the foresayde gre-  
tes and oyles, your backe, belly, nauyl,  
sydes, and suche places as are neare to  
the priuie partes. Furthermore, it shal-  
be greatly profitable for her to conuey  
inwarde into the priuie parte these fore-  
sayde oyles or gretes with a sponge, or  
other thyng made for the purpose, she  
lying bryght, the middes of her bodye  
most hyest, so that it maye the better re-  
maine within her, and that chiefly yf  
the Water be drie, other els the partie  
very leane and spare.

Annoyntments  
to supplie.

¶ Sweete Summe.

It shalbe also very profitable for her to  
luffume the nether places with Muske,  
Amber, Galia Muskata, which put on  
embres, perce a goodly sauour, by the  
which

Whiche the weather places open them-  
selfe, and drawe bottneward;

And as I sayde before, she must take  
good heed to her diet, that she take thin-  
ges the which may comfort and streng-  
then the body, feeding not ouer much of  
any thing, and to drinke pleasant and  
wel savouring wine, or other drinke, al-  
so moderately to exercise the body in do-  
ing some thing, styring, moving, going,  
or standing, more then otherwile. She  
was wont to do, these thinges further  
the birth, and make it the easier, and  
this is the manner of diet the which  
we aduise the woman to kepe the mo-  
neth before her labour, or longer.

Another diet there is, the which she  
ought to observe in the tyme of labour,  
when the stomack and thinges begyn  
to come on, & the humours which yet  
hitherto haue remained about the Pa-  
terix or mother collected, nowe begyn  
to flowe forth, and the matter of dyet  
consisteth in two sortes. First that such  
thinges be prouided as had in readynesse

Whiche

that is to be  
don whē the  
tyme of labo-  
r is come.

whiche may cause the birth to labour  
 to be very easy. Secondly, with stanch  
 defendyng, and to putt away (so neare as  
 may be) the instant and present dolors.  
 And as touching this poynt, it shalbe  
 very profitable for her, for the space of  
 an houre to gett byt, then (rising agayne)  
 to go by and to lye a payre of staryes,  
 cying and reaching so longe as she can,  
 so to stretch herselfe. And also it shalbe  
 verve good for a  
 tyme, to retayne and kepe in her breath,  
 for because that through that meanes,  
 the guttes and other ayres be thus toge-  
 ther, and depressed downe ward. And  
 it shalbe very good to receiue some me-  
 dicine to procure the birth of the which  
 we will speake more hereafter.  
 Nowe when the woman perceiueth  
 the Water or Mother to waxe late or  
 late, and to be dissolved, and that the  
 humours thus forth in great plentie,  
 the which she muste for her to let downe,  
 leaning back ward in manner byt right.  
 For the whiche purpose in some regions  
 (as

The second booke  
 Of the  
 Diseases of the  
 Women.

The second booke. Fol. lxi.

(as in Fraunce & Germanie) the good  
wives have stoles for the nonce, which  
being but loose, and not hye from the  
grounde, be made to compass wyse and  
cane so hold we in the middes, that that  
may be receyued from vnderneath whi-  
che is looked for, and the backe of the  
stole is sitting backward, receyuing the  
backe of the woman: the fashion of the  
whiche stole, is set in the beginning of  
the by: sheweth her after this sort

And when the time of labours comes  
in the said stole ought to be put many  
elbowes or elbowes in the backe of it, the  
whiche the good wyfe may remove from  
one place to another, according as neces-  
sity shall require. The midwife her selfe  
shall be before the labouring woman, &  
shall diligently obserue and waite, how  
it cometh, and after what manner the child  
is poynted it selfe: also shall she with her han-  
des, first annointed with the oyle of Oli-  
uonides, or the oyle of white Lillies,  
rule and direct every thyng as shall  
seeme best.

Also

The airplane  
must give com-  
fortable rides  
to the partic-  
ular flying.

Also the Wydwyfe muste instruct and comfort the partie not onely refreshing her with good meate and drinke, but also with good woordes, geuyng her good hope of a speedfull deliuerance, encouragynge and customaryng her to patience and tollerance, byddynge her to helde in her breath so muche as she maye, also strekyng gently with her handes her belly aboute the navel, for that helpeth to depresse the brith downe towards the birth. And whiche soeuer of the woman be anythyng grosse, fat, or fleshy, is halfe best for her to be groweling for by that meanes the shewe is thrust and deuyled downe ward, and by that also the private partes with the excre of wyte fallen. And of euery thing to require it, let not the Wydwyfe be in anydeme such aucted to handle the partes, and to relace and loole the straitnes, for so muche as shal be vnto her selfe, that shal be vnto the more of the wyfe, and the labour.

But this waste the Midwyfere above



all thynges take heede of, that she com-  
pel not the woman to labour before the  
byrth come forwarde, and shew it selfe:  
For before that tyme, all labour is in  
vayne, labour as much as ye lyfte. And  
in this case many tymes it cometh to  
passe, that the partie hath laboured so  
soze before the tyme, that when she  
should labour in deede, her myght and  
strength is spent before in vayne, so that  
she is not now able to helpe her selfe,  
and that is a perrilous case.

To labour  
much before the  
due tyme, doth  
but feeble the  
woman, and no  
thyng profit.

Furthermore, when the Secondine  
or seconde byrth (in the which the byrth  
is wrapped and conteyned) doth once  
appeare, then may ye knowe that the  
labour is at hand, wherfore if the same  
secondine breake not of his owne kynd,  
it shalbe the Midwives part and office,  
with her nayles easly and gentely to  
breake and rent it, or yf that may not  
conueniently be done, then raple yf be-  
twene your fingers a peece of it, and cut  
it of with a payre of sheares, or sharpe  
knyfe, but so that ye hurt not the byrth

L. i.

With

## The second booke.

With the cut. This done by and by ensueth consequently the flux and flowe of humours, of the whiche I spake before, and then next foloweth immediately the byrth.

But if it so chauce that the Seconde should be cut by the Midwife, and all the Watery part issued and spent before due time & necessitie should require it, so that the priue passage be left exicate and dry, the byrth not yet appearing, by this meanes the labour should be hindered and letted. In this case ye shall annoynt and molifie that priue passage with the oyle of Whyte Lyllyes, or some of the greases spoken of before, first warmed, and so conueied into the priue partes, the which thynges wyll cause the way to be slyppery, souple, and easie for the byrth to passe. But chiefly in these difficulties should profite the Whyte of an egge, together with the yolke powdred into the same place, which shoulde cause it to be most slypperie and slydyng, and supplie the  
roomie

The second booke. Fol. lxxij.

roome of the natural humidities spent before.

And if it be so, that the byrth be of a great growth, and the head sticke in the connyng foorth, then must the Midwyfe helpe all that she may, With her hand fyrst annoynted with some oyle, opening and enlargyng the way, that the issue may be the freer. Like wyse must be done yf she beare two chyldren at once. And all this is spoken of the naturall byrth, When that fyrst proceedeth the head, and then the rest of the body ordinateley, as ye may see in the fyrst of the byrth figures folowynge.

The head proceeding fyrst.

ii. But When the byrth cometh not naturally, then must the Midwyfe do all her diligence and payne (yf it may be possible) to turne the byrth tenderlye With her annoynted handes, so that it may be reduced agayne to a naturall byrth. As for example: Sometyme it chaunceth the chylde to come the legges & both armies & handes downeward, close to the sydes fyrst foorth, as appeareth

The legges and both handes downe, proceeding fyrst.

L. ii.

in

## The second booke.

in the seconde of the byrth figures. In this case the Midwyfe must doo all her payne with tender handlyng and annoynting to receyue foorth the chyld, the legges being still close together, and the handes likewise remayning, as appeareth in the sayd second figure.

Holbeitt, it were farre better (if it may be done by any possible wayes or meanes) that the Midwyfe shoulde turne these legges commyng fyrst foorth, bywarde agayne by the bellywarde, so that the head myght descende downewarde by the backe part of the wombe, for then naturally agayne and without peryll myght it proceede & come foorth as the fyrst.

The chyld of  
the byrth  
figures.

iii. Agayne sometime the byrth cometh foorth with both legges and feete first, the handes beyng lyfted vp aboue the head of the chyld, and this is the perillousst maner of birth that is, as appeareth in the. iij. of the byrth figures. And here must the Midwyfe do what she may to turne the byrth (yf it may be possible)

The second booke. Fol. lxxiii.

possible) to the first figure, and yf it wyl not be, then reduce the handes of it downe to the sydes, and so to reduce it into the seconde figure. But yf this also wyl not be, then receyue the seate as they come forth, and binde them with some fayre linnen cloth, and so tenderly and very softly lose out the byrth tyl all be come forth, and this is a very iopardous labour.

iiij. Also sometyme the byrth cometh forth with one foote onely, the other being left vpward, as appeareth in the fourth figure. And in this case it behoueth the labouring woman to lay her vpryght vpon her backe, holdyng vp her thighes & belly, so that her head be the lower part of her body, then let the Bydwylse with her hande returne in agayne the foote that cometh out first, in as tender maner as may be, and warne the woman that laboureth to styre and moue her selfe, so that by the mouyng and styrring, the byrth may be turned the head downewarde, and so

The fourth figure.

## The second booke.

to make a naturall byrth of it, and then to set the woman in the stoole agayne, and to do as ye dyd in the fyrst figure. But yf it be so, that notwithstanding the mothers styrryng and mouyng, the byrth do not turne, then must the Midwyfe with her hande softly fetch out the other legge whiche remayned behynde, euermore takyng heede of this, that by handlyng of the chylde, she do not remoue ne set out of theyr place the two handes hangyng downeward toward the feete.

**Chr. 3. figure.**

**v.** Lyke wyse sometyme it cometh to passe, that the side of the chylde cometh forwarde, as appeareth in the .v. figure, and then must the Midwyfe do so, that it may be returned to his naturall fashion, and so to come forth.

**Chr. 4. figure.**

**vi.** Also sometyme the chylde cometh forth the feete forwarde, the legges beyng abroad, as in the .vi. figure, and then must the Midwyfe see, that the feete & legges may be ioyned together, and so to procede and come forth,  
euer:

euermoze regardyng the handes, as I warned you before.

vij. If it come with one of the knees The. iij. figure  
or both forwarde, as in the. vii. figure,  
then must the Midwyfe put by the  
byrth, till such time as the legges & feete  
come ryght forth, & then to do as afore.

viii. When the chylde commeth head- The. iiii. figure  
long, one of the handes conuynge out  
and appearyng before, as in the. viii. fi-  
gure, then let the byrth proceede no far-  
ther, but let the Midwyfe put in her  
hande, and tenderly by the shoulders  
thrust in the byrth agayne, so that the  
hand may be resettled in his place, and  
the byrth to come forth ordynately and  
naturally, as in the fyrst figure: But yf  
by this meanes the hande come not to  
his conuenient place, then let the wo-  
man lye vpryght with her thighes and  
belly vpwordes, and her head doolwe-  
wardes, so that by that meanes it may  
be brought to passe, and then byrnyng her  
to her seate agayne.

ix. But yf it proceede with both The. ix. figure  
L. iiii handes



## The second booke.

handes forwardes, then must ye lyke-  
wise do as before, by the shoulders thru-  
styng it backe agayne, vntyll such tyme  
as the handes ly close to the sides, & so to  
come forth, as appereth in the. ix. figure.

The. x. figure.

x. But when it commeth ardwarde,  
as in the. x. figure may be scene, then  
must the Midwife with her handes re-  
turne it agayne, vntyll such tyme that  
the byrth be turned, the legges & feete  
forwarde: other els, yf it may be so, it  
were best that the head might come for-  
warde, and so naturally to procede.

The. xi. figure.

xi. And yf so be that it appeare and  
come forth first with the shoulders, as  
in the. xi. figure, then must ye sayre and  
softe thrust it backe agayne by the  
shoulders, tyll suche tyme as the head  
come forwarde.

The. xii. figure.

xii. But when the byrth commeth  
foorth with both the handes and both  
the feete at once, as in the. xii. figure,  
then must the Midwife tenderly take  
the chyld by the head, and retorne the  
legges bywarde, and so receiue it forth.

xiii. And

THE BIRTH FYGVRES  
THE WOMANS STOOLE  
THE



II



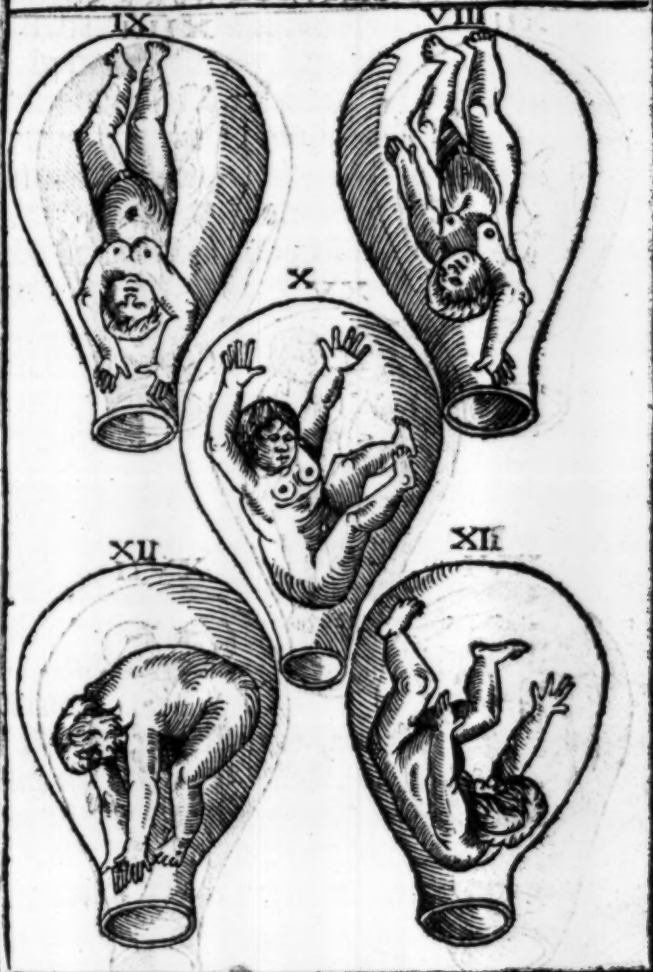
I



THE THREE STONES  
THE BIRTH OF THE



FIGVRES



THE BYRTHE FYGVRES

XIII



XIII



XV



XVI



XVII



The second booke. Fol. lxxvi.

xiii. And when it commeth bestward The. xiii. figure  
as in the. xiii. figure, the legges and hand-  
des by dving behinde, then let the Wyd-  
wyfe take it by the feete or by the head,  
whiche that shalbe most apt and com-  
modious to come forwarde, returning  
the rest upward, & so to receiue it forth:  
but if it may be hedling, that shalbe best.

xiiii. Nowe sometyne it chaunceth The. xiiii. figure.  
the woman to haue two at a burthen, &  
that both procede together headlong,  
as in the. xiiii. figure, and then must the  
Wydwyfe receyue the one after the o-  
ther, but so, that she let not slippe the  
one, whylest she taketh the first.

xv. If both come forth at once with The. xv. figure.  
their feete forward, then must the Wyd-  
wyfe be very diligent to receiue first the  
one, and then the other, as hath been  
shewed before.

xvi. When the one commeth head- The. xvi. figure.  
long, the other footelwise, then must the  
Wydwyfe helpe the birth that is most  
nearest the issue, and if that commeth  
footel long (if she can) to returne it vpon  
the

**The second booke.**

**the head, as is spoken of before, takyng**  
**euer heede that the one be not noysome**  
**to the other in receyuyng soorth of ey-**  
**ther of them.**

**And to be short, let the Myddwyfe of-**  
**ten tymes annoynt & mollifie the way**  
**and passage with some of the foresayde**  
**oyntmentes, to make the womans la-**  
**boure so much the easier, and haue the**  
**lesse trauaile and payne. And yf there**  
**chaunce to be any Apostume or diseale**  
**about those places in this tyme, by such**  
**annoynting to alaye and swage the**  
**payne, so that for the time it may be the**  
**lesse grieve to the partie, as I spake be-**  
**fore also. And for them that be in this**  
**case, it shalbe best to lye groueling, as I**  
**sayd of the grosse, fatte and fleshy wo-**  
**man.**

**Remedies and medicines by the whiche**  
**the labour may be made more tol-**  
**erable, easie, and with-**  
**out great payne.**

**Cap. 6.**

**The**



The second booke. Folle. xlii.

**T**he thynges which helpe the birth & make it more easie, are these. First the woman that laboureth must eyther lye grouelyng, or els vpright, leaning backward, according as it shall seeme commodious and necessary to the partie, or as she is accustomed. And in winter or colde weather, the chamber wherein she laboureth must be warmed, but in sommer or hot weather, let in the ayre to refresh her withall, lest betwene extreme heate and labour the woman faint and soone. And furthermore, she must be prouoked to sneesynge, and that eyther with the pollder of Eleborus, or els of Pepper. Also the sydes of the woman must be stroken downward with the handes, which thyng helpeth greatly & furthereth. And let the Midwyfe alway be very diligent, prouidyng and seeynge what shalbe necessary for the woman, annoynting the priuities with oyle, or other such greace as I spake of before, in this fashion.

appears to  
beige and pro-  
mote the birth.

The

## The second booke.

A good mollifi-  
yng oymment.

Take the oyle of whyte Lillies, or Duckes grese, & with that temper two graynes waight of Saffron, and one grayne of Muske, and therewith annoynt the secrete partes. Of this profite nothing, sheweth this suffumigation.

Take Myrrhe, Galbanum, Castoreum, let those be beaten, and make lyke pylls of them, tempered together with bulles gall: then take a dram of these pylls, and put it on hott coales, and let the woman receyue the fume and savour of it underneath.

Another pessime: Take yelowc berystone, Myrrhe, Madder, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, of ech lyke much, and temper al those together, making of them pylls, and with those also ye may make fume, to be receyued vnderneath.

Item, the fume of Cullier dung, or of Hardies dung, by putting to of Oppoponacum, is sotheraigne for the same. All these fumes open the poodres beneath, and causeth nature to be the freer in deliuerance.

Also it is very good to dyp woodd in the iuyce of Rue, and the same so conuey into the secretes. Also the powder of Aristolochia rotunda, or the roote called Bothor maris, Cielaminus, or malum terre, or the seede of Stainlagre, any of these wrapped in woodd, and conueyed inward, prouoketh and calleth forth the byth.

Item, take Helleborus, Oppoponacum, and wrap them together in woodd, & minister them inward, for that wyll bring forth and prouoke the byth, whether it be alque or dead. Also the  
rynde

**The second booke. Fol. lxxviij.**

rynde and barke called Cassia lignea beaten to powder, and tempered with wine & drunken, prouoketh well the birth.

Item Asa fetida, of the bignes and waight of a Pease, mingled together with Castorium, of the waight of a dram, beaten together and tempered with wine mixt with water, and so drunken, is very good to prouoke the birth. Also Canell drunke with wine is very good.

Item, take a scruple of Roses, with the water of the seede of fenegreke, Cicercula, Maydenhayre, all beaten together and sodden, and the oyle of blewe flouredelyce, a small quantitie tempered therewithall, and then geue it to the woman that laboureth, and it shall prouoke the birth greatly. And Cassia lignea and Asa fetida drunke with wine, be very good for the same.

Also Holyoke sodden in cunduite water and drunken, is soueraigne for the same purpose, and it is very good for her to washe her in the water in the which this Holyoke is decocte and sodden.

Item, certayne pylls the whiche make the labour easie and without payne.

Take Canell, or Cinamome, and Sawine, of ech a dram, of Cassia lignea a dram and a halfe, of Myrre, Aristolochia rotunda, & Costus amarus, of ech a dram, of Storax liquida halfe a dram, & of Oppium the waight of. xii. graynes, beate these altogether, & fourme them into pylls, and geue vnto the woman two drammes of these pylls  
with

## The second booke.

with two ounces of good olde wine.

Item, Saffron and Syler montanuin prouoketh the byrth of any lyving thyng, yf it be dammen: howbeit to a woman geue neuer passyng a dram at once of Saffron, for greater quantitie shoulde greatly hurt.

Item, take .v. drammes of Sauine, of Rue or hearbe Grace one dragma and a halfe, of Juniper beryes two drams, of Asa ferida, Amoniacū, Madder, of ech two drams, of these make pylls, geuen to the woman in labour, with water in which is sodden Sauine and Peniriell, or els with the broth of Cicercula, and the iuyce of Rue shall helpe very greatly.

Item, take two drammes of Sauine, of Asa ferida, Amoniacum and Madder, of eche halfe a dram, these temper together in pylls, and geue her with wine one dram of the same.

Item, take of Aristolochia longa, Pepper, and Myrthe, of eche lyke muche, confict them together with wine, and make pylls of them, and minister them with an ounce of water of the decoction of Lupines, these pylls be of such efficacy and strength, that it alleuiateth and brayneth the byrth, it deliuereth the Matric or Mother from all maner of byrth, be it algyue or dead.

Item, take of whyte Bedellium, Myrthe, and Sauine, of eche lyke muche, temper these with Cassia lignea, and Hony, & make pylls of them to the bygnesse of Peason, and of these pylls geue at ech tyme fyve to the labouring woman, which

which be of the same myght and strength, that the other pylls spoken of here next before are.

Item, take of Myrthe, Castorium, & Storax, of eche one dram, temper them with Honey, and make pylls of it: these for this purpose excell and passe all other, they be of suche vertue and strength in operation.

A plaster to prouoke the byrth.

Take wyde Cowarde, and seethe it in water, in the same water temper Myrthe, the iurce of Rue, and Barlye meale, so much as shalbe sufficient, stampe these thynges together, and make it plaster wyle, then lay it to the womans bellye betweene the Hauell and the nether part: This plaster shall helpe marueylously.

And although many other thynges there be which haue vertue and powver to prouoke birth, and to helpe it, yet leauyng all such thynges for breuitie and shortnesse, we haue set here only a certayne, whose efficacie and powver shalbe sufficient to  
this present purpose.

Howe

## The second booke.

How the secondine or second byrth  
shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come  
not freely of his owne kinde.

Cap. v.



Ere also sometime it com-  
nieth to passe, that the se-  
condine which is wont to  
come together with the  
byrth, remaine and tarry  
behynde, and followe not, and that for  
diuers causes. One is, for because per-  
aduenture the woman hath ben so sore  
weakened & feeblished with trauayle,  
doulour, and payne of that fyrst byrth,  
that she hath no strength remainyng  
to helpe her selfe, to the expellyng of the  
second byrth. Another may be, that it  
be entangled, tyed, or let within the ma-  
tric (whiche chaunceth many tymes)  
or that it be destitute of humors, so that  
the water be flowen from it sooner  
then tyme is, whiche shoulde make the  
places more slipperie and more easie to  
passe thorowe: Or els that the places  
ouer weeryed with long & sore labour,  
for

for payne contract oꝛ geather together,  
and enclose them selfe agayne, oꝛ that  
the places be swolne for anguysh and  
payne, and so let the comyng forth of  
the second byrth.

But to be short, of whatsoeuer cause  
it be thus stopped, the Midwyfe in any  
wyse must fynde suche meanes, that it  
may be vnloosed and expelled. For oꝛ  
therwyse, great inconueniencie shoulde  
chaunce to the partie, & specially suffo-  
cation and choking of the Matric, wher-  
che also must so much the more be taken  
heede to, for because the second birth re-  
tayned and kept within, wyl soone pu-  
trifie and rot, wherof wyl insue ill noy-  
some & pestiferous vapours ascendyng  
to the hart, the braynes, & the noddiffe,  
through the which meanes the woman  
shalbe short winded, faint harted, often  
soundyng, & lying without any maner  
of mouyng oꝛ styrryng in the pulces:  
yea, and many tymes is playnely suffo-  
cated, strangled, and dead of it.

wherefore that none of these thinges  
M. i. happen



## The second booke.

happen, With all diligence and payne it must be prouided that the secondine be expelled.

Retention of  
flowes for  
weakenesse.

If retention of it come by weakenesse of the labourer, through long trauayle, then must she be recomforted & strengthened with good comfortable meats and drinks, which may enheart her, as broth made of the yolke of Egges, or with good olde wine, and good fat and tidie flesh, or Birdes, hennes flesh, Capons, Partridge, Piggins, and such lyke.

And yf retention of this secondine come, because the place is contracte together agayne, eyther els that the Matric is swollen for long paine: then must be vsed such thynges to prouoke it out, the which doo make the way slypper, supple, & easie for it to proceede with the oyles of oymntmentes spoken of before, as oyle of white Lillies, of Maiorum, and of blew Lillies.

Item, the beries of Juniper, or Galbanum, beaten to powdred & drunke with like warmed wine, wyl cause the same  
to

to issue out.

Item, Sothernwood, or els Penerial  
sodden in wine, and the decoction drun-  
ken, is of the same vertue.

Item, to suffume the secretes with  
the perfumes written of before, is good  
for this purpose, and the vapour of the  
water in which Mallowes, Holyoke,  
and Beresfoote be sodden, receyued be-  
neath, is lyke good.

Also to walhe that partes in water  
in which is sodden Branne, or to holde  
a lytle bagge full of sodden Branne to  
the place, and therewithall to soke the  
place, is very profitable.

But yf the retention of the secondine  
come by reason that it is entangled or  
fastened in some place of the Harrix, so  
that it wyll not resolue ne loose: then  
make a fume vnderneath of brimstone,  
Iuie leaues, and Cresses, or els of Cres-  
ses and Fygges.

Also of all odoriferous and sweete  
smellyng thynges, as Ambre, Muske,  
Frankencense, Gallia Muscata, and confec-

Q. ij.

tion

## The second booke.

tion neare, the which saours and perfumes put on the embers, must be so closely receiued vnderneath, that no part of the smell do ascende to the nose of the woman. For to the nose shoulde the saour of nothing come, but only of suche thinges the which stinke, or haue abhominable smel, as Alafetira, Castoriū, mans heare or womans heare burnte, Peccockes fethers burnt. Item, in this case it shalbe very good to make a perfume vnderneath of the houe of an asse, which thinges although they be of yll saour, yet they be of such nature and efficacie, that they occasionate not only the seconde, but also dead byrthes to proceede and come forth out of the Matrix.

And in this case also let the woman holde her breath inwarde, so muche as she can, for that shall dryue downward such thynges as be in the body to be expelled.

Item, let her be prouoked to sneele with the pouder of Eleborus or Pepper put in the nose, holding her mouth and  
nose

nose so close as may be.

Also the oyntment whiche is called Vnguentum Basilicon, conueyed into the matrix, is very good, for it molifieth the place, and draweth out the secondine perforce, the whiche so done as it is expelled, infuse the oyle of Roses into the same matrix. Item, Rose water tempered with a quantitie of the pouder of Holyoke, and drunke, is good to expell the secondine.

And yf it be so that any part of the secondine do appeare, let the Midwyfe receyue it tenderly, loosyng it out fayre and softly lest it breake, and yf ye doubt that it wil breake, then let the Midwife tye that parte of the whiche she hath handfast, to the womans legge or foote, not very strayght lest it breake, neither very laxe lest it slyp in agayne, and then cause her to sneese. Now yf the secondine tary or sticke, so that it come not quickly forwarde, then loose it a lytle and a lytle very tenderly, wreathyng it from one syde to another, tyl such tyme

¶. iij.

as

## The second booke.

as it be gotten out, but euer beware of  
violent and hasty moving of it, lest that  
With the seconde byrth ye remove the  
Matrix also.

And yf in this meane Whyle the Wo-  
man saynt or solwe by reason of great  
payne ensuyng of the takyng away of  
this secondine, then must ye minister  
such thynges to her the which comfort  
the head and the hart, as be electuaries  
Which are confect With Muske, Ambre,  
and the confection of pretious Stones,  
as Diamargariton, and suche other. Also  
suche thynges the whiche comfort the  
stomacke, as Diagalanga, Dia cinamomum,  
and such lyke, which are allway in a re-  
dynesse at the Apothecaries, the which  
also she shall receiue With wine.

Item, to remove the secondine, & to ex-  
pel it, take Rue, Horehounde, Sothern-  
Wood, and Motherwort, of eche lyke  
quantitie, and then take so much of the  
oyle of Lillies, as may be sufficient to  
steepe, moysten, and soke the foresayd  
herbes,

herbes, put all this togeather into a glazen pottle, couered With such a couer, that it haue a lytle hole or vente aboue in the toppe of it, and sette this pottle ouer a fyre of coales, so that it boyle a lytle Whyle, then take it from the fyre, & set it vnder the stoole, Where the woman sytteth, made for the nonce, hauyng a pype made for the purpose, of the Which the one ende ye shall put into the vent or hole of the couer of the pot, and the other ende must the partie receyue into her body, and so to sit closed rounde about With clothes, that no vapoure or ayre goe forth of the pot, hauyng a fewe coles vnder it, to keepe it hotte: and thus sitte the space of an houre or two, tyll suche tyme as the secondine moue or begyn to proceede of his owne kynde.

And if it be so that ye profite not this wayes, yet then laye this plaster on the bellye betweene the nauell and the secretes, of the Whiche we shall speake  
M. iij. hereafter,

## The second booke.

hereafter, the which is of such operation and efficacie, that it expelleth dead byrthes. If for all this the secondine come not forward, then leaue it, and vse no more medicines ne remedies to that purpose, but let it alone, for within few dayes it wyll putrifie and corrupt, and dissolue into a watery substance, thicke lyke bryne or other fer mired with water, and so issue forth. Howbeit, in the meane whyle it wyl put the woman to great paine in the head, in the hart, and in the stomacke, as we touched before.

How that many thynges chaunce to the women after their labour, and how to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the same. Cap. vi.

**I**t is also to be vnderstanded, that many times after the deliuerance, happeneth to women other the feuer or ague, or swelling, or inflation of the body, other tumblyng in the belly, or els commotion or settelyng out of order of the Mother



ther or Patric. Cause of the whiche  
thynges is sometymes lacke of due and  
sufficient purgation and clesyng of the  
flowres after the byrth, or els contrary:  
wyse ouermuche flowyng of the same,  
whiche soe doth weaken the woman:  
also the great labour and styrryng of  
the Patric in the byrth.

Then as oft as it commeth for lacke  
of due purgation of the flowres, there  
must be ministred suche thynges the  
whiche may prouoke the same, whether  
it be by medicines taken at the mouth,  
or by lotion and washing of the feete, or  
by fumes, or odour, or enuplastication, or  
by decoction of hearbes seruing to that  
purpose, or els by oyntmentes, and such  
other thynges, according as the person  
or the peryll both require: of the whiche  
thynges, few or no women be ignorant.  
And ye must take diligent hede that she  
be exactly & vtterly purged. To this be  
agreeable all suche symples the whiche  
prouoke brine, and open the vaynes,  
makyng free way for the blood to passe  
and

The second booke.

and sende the humours and matter  
downward as Motherwort, Alarum,  
Santall, Veneriall, Parseley, Charuyl,  
Annis seede, Fenell seede, Juniper ber-  
ries, Rue, Bay berries, Germaunder,  
Valerian, Tyme, Cinamome, Spike-  
harde, and such other. All those thinges  
as they do prouoke & cause brine, so do  
they also prouoke and cause the flow-  
ers to depart. Howbeit, as neare as ye  
can, vse none of these thynges without  
the counsaile of an expert Physition,  
lest whylest ye helpe one place, ye hurt  
another: also to sneese, helpeth muche  
to this matter, & to holde in the breath,  
enclosing the nose and the mouth. Also  
sanctification made of the eyes of salte  
fyshe, or of the houe of a horse vnder-  
neath, prouoketh the flowres. If ye  
profite not by this meanes, then beyng  
able to beare it, let her blood in the  
baine called Saphina, vnder the ancles of  
the feete, for this prouoketh flowres  
chiefely of all other thynges.

Like wise do, if the woman haue the  
ague

agrie after her labour, for that commeth  
 of like cause by retention of the flowres;  
 and in the feuer let her vse to drinke  
 water, in the which is decocted Barley  
 beaten, or Cicer and Barley together,  
 or water in which is sodden Tamarisks, or  
 Whay of mylke, and let her eate a callis  
 made of a Corke, and Sweete Pomogra-  
 nates, for these thinges do prouoke the  
 flowres, and mitigateth the unmode-  
 rate heate, refreshing greatly the body,  
 loosyng and opening such thinges the  
 which before were constricted and clud-  
 dered together.

For the agrie in  
 women with  
 chyldre.

If the body after labour do swell and  
 inflate, then let her drinke water, in the  
 which is sodden Cicer & Cummin, bea-  
 ten together.

Item good olde wine with the electuarie cal-  
 led Diaciminum, or of the Trochiskes of Althe-  
 chengle, otherwyle called Halicacabus.

Also in this case a clyster made of such thinges  
 the whiche doo banquish and expell ventosi-  
 ties and wyndynesse, as Amis seede, fenell  
 seede, Rue the hearbe & the seede, Bay berries,

Cony

## The second booke.

**Commen** scilicet **Alloapellarie** or **suppositar** made for that part of **Austplochia rotunda**, **Squinantium**, **Storax Liquida**, **Dorenicum**, **Zeduarla**.

**Agayne**, if the woman after her labour haue fretting and gnawing of the guttes, and payne of the **Matri**, and other secrete partes there about, then let her vse the vapoure and fume of suche thynges the whiche haue vertue to mitigate, swage, and alay the payne, as **Hallowes**, **Holyoke**, **Jenegerke**, **Commim**, **Camomell**, and **Saune**. Of these also make emplaisters and linges, the which may be applyed to the payned places.

Also to annoynt the places with **Oleum selsaminu** (yf it were to be had) or with oyle of sweete **Almondes**. And if no great heate do abounde in the woman, she may drynke **Triacle**, or **Trifera magna**, with wine in which is drect **Motherwort** or **Mugge wort**.

Also agaynst payne in the priue partes, take **Demistal**, **Policaria**, five leaues of **Baye tree**, seeth them togeather, and receyue the vapour vnderneath closely.

Item, take **Rite**, red **Motherwort**, **Sothernwood**, beate them together, a temper them with the oyle of **Demistal**, and put altogether into a pot, and let it ouer the fyre a while vntill be somewhat sodden together, & then take it off agayne, and put it into a litle round linnen bagge, made for the purpose, the whiche with these heates in it, ye shall conuey into the secretes.

Item, take **Camomell** and **Lyne**, of eche lyke much

The second booke. Fol. lxxvi.

much. iiii. handfulls, bray them together, and seethe them with white wine, and then put it in a round bag of linnen, as before was done, and conuay it into the womans priuie partes.

Item, let her drinke for the same purpose, two graynes of Muste with wine.

Item, take white Onions, and couer them vnder the hotte ashes, the which when they be well roasted, beate them together with freshe Butter vn salted, and make it in maner of a plaster, and then put it in a linnen bagge, and conuay it into the places as before: in the meane while perfumming the priuie partes with whyte Frankencense and Storax.

If it be so that the woman be bexed about the backe and loynes after her labour, take Camomell and Muggerwort, of eche two handfulls, of Woome wood, Sothernwood, of eche one handfull, of Motherwoort three handfulls, of Cinamome and Nutmegges beaten small halfe on ounce, decocte all these thinges together, and in the water of this decoction, beyng warme, dyp a sponge or other linnen clothes, somenting, looking, and streeking the backe with the same, and so do oftentimes, or els put all these foresayd hearbes together sodden in a bagge, and lay it plaster wise to the backe.

If this profite not, take oyle of Rardine, oyle of whyte Lillies, of eche an ounce and an halfe, to the which put a dram of Nutmegges beaten to smal powder, with this annoynt the backe.

Item, take oyle of Anece, oyle of Camomell,  
of

## The second booke.

of eche an ounce, Oyle of whyte Lylles two ounces, or Ware two drams, dissolve all these together over the fyre, and therewith annoynt the backe.

What remedies  
when the flow-  
ers issue more  
abundantly  
then meetye.

But yf after the labour the flowres  
issue more vehemently, and in greater  
abundaunce then they shoulde, to the  
great effeblishyng of the woman, and  
inducyng of much langour and payne-  
fulnesse: then first shal ye note wherup-  
pon it commeth, for the cause knowen,  
the disease may the more redyly be re-  
cured: and causes of it be diuers, but  
most especiall those that folowe, that  
is to say, Of muche aboundant super-  
fluous blood containned in the whole  
body, or of muche commixtion of the  
cholerike humour and the blood togea-  
ther, by the which the blood is enfi-  
red and chauffed, & so distendeth, openeth,  
and setteth abroad the waynes whiche  
descende to the Matrix.

Also the blood being very thynne and  
waterish, for so it penetrateth thyn-  
nely, and issueth forth the sooner. Also yf the  
paines be very large, and receive much  
blood,

blood, for in that case they sende forth  
the more agayne. And if the Matrix be  
bunnyghtie and weakened, the daynes  
lyke wyle are weake and large, so that  
they can not retayne nor withholde the  
blood.

And if the body of the woman, or the  
outwarde partes be very dence, close, &  
compact together, so that the outward  
pores be contract and shutte, in suche  
wyle that no vapours or sweete can issue  
out at them, then this shall cause the yll  
humours (whiche otherwyle woulde  
passe through the pores in sweete) to re-  
maine within the body, and there to  
engender and encrease great fluxe and  
abundaunce of matter, whiche proce-  
deth with the flowres, & augmenteth  
the quantitie of them.

Also yf the daynes of the Matrix be  
(by some chaunce) open & flowe forth,  
as yf the Matrix be perished or other-  
wyle vitiate : or yf it chaunce that  
the woman haue hadde a fall, or hath  
been thrust, or beaten, by all and any  
of



## The second booke.

of this meanes may come this inordinate fluxe of flowres.

Good counsell to  
the woman.

Now seeyng then that it ensueth by so manyfolde occasions and causes, it shalbe meete that womē in this case be nothing ashamed ne abashed to disclose their mynde vnto expert Physicians, shewing them euery thing in it, as they knowe Wherebyon it shoulde come, so that the Physician vnderstandyng the womans vnde, may the sooner by his learnyng and experience consyder the true cause of it, and the very remedie to amende it. And many thinges there be which ceasse and restraime this ouermuch flowyng of flowres, both Electuaries, Confections, Trochiskes, Pouders, Clysters, Odours, Suffumigations, Bathes, Plasters, and Oynementes, of whiche for the loue of women I wyl here set forth the most principal and best.

First then to stinte and restrayne the outrageous fluxe of flowres, it shalbe very good to binde the armes strayght and strongly, and not the feete or handes, as some vnwyse men doo teach

teache, and then to set a ventose bore or sucking glasse with fyre (which is called *sorpyng*) vnder the brestes, without any scarification, laying also linnen clothes dypped in vinegar on the belly betwene the Natuell & the secretes; conueying also into the places suche thynges which haue vertue to restraine blood, as the flowre and rinde of *Pomegranate*, *Amb*, & *Terra Sigillata*, *Bole Armeniacke*, *Sanguis Draconis*, *Hematites*, the red *Rose*, white *frankencense*, & *Galles*, al those thynges, or as many of them as ye can conueniently get, beate them to powder in lyke portion, and temper them with red wine, making of it a plaster, the which so tempered, put vnto a lytle rounde bagge, the quantitie of a mans thumbe, the which he shall put into the priuite partes.

Item, another plaster, to be ministred lyke wyse.

Take of the blood stone, called *Hematites*, *Bole Armeniack*, of ech halfe an ounce, *Sanguis Draconis*, *Licum*, of ech two drams, *Karabe*, other wise named *Ambre*, the cuppes of *Acornes*, *Cypres tree* *Myrris*, flowres of *Pomegranate*, of ech one dram, of the scales of *Iron* one dram and a halfe, *Asperentine* and pitch the lyke quantitie, or so much as shalbe sufficient to make a softe and somewhat liquid plaster, beate & bray all these together, tempering it to a plaster, and then do with it, as ye dyd with the other before.

Another ointment for the same purpose.

Take oyle *Martine*, oyle of *Roses*, of ech foure ounces, *Karabe*, the scrapping of *Iuery*, the  
P. i.
scrapping

## The second booke.

scraping of a goates horne, red Corall, Terra sigillata, white frankincense, of eche (being wel and synely beaten) two drams, of whyte ware two ounces: all those tempered together, make them in an oynment, and the re with annoynthe the wombe and the secretes.

*A bath concerning the same.*

Take roome wood, Plantaine the more and the lesse, the toppes of guines, frethe braunches of wyld Mulberies, or of the bramble, burrepe Damassons, Sloes, or Bolasse, wyld peares, Medlers or Whippilles, of eche two handfulls, and red Rose leaues two handfulls, of Bales, of all sortes of Thylls, of eche two handfulls, of Cinchifoyle the leaues and rootes, Tormentyll the rootes, Colubyne, of eche an handfull: Also of Acorne Cuppes, a sawcer full, of Gaules, of Acornes pylls, of Bursa pastoris, of eche two handfulls, beate all these to powder, cutting and brusling that that wyl not be beaten to powder, and seeche them togeather in rayne water, or els in water in the which ten or twelue burnt flynt stones haue ben quenched. This done, let the woman bath her selfe in this water vnto the Hauel, and when she commeth looth of the bath, geue her to drinke two drammes of Electuarium Athanasie, or Miclete, with Plantaine water, or if she be soze thirstie, with red wyne.

And like wyse ye may geue to her of these electuaries that folowe. Take good olde rose Sugar two ounces, of red Corall, burne Iuery, Sole Armeniacke, of eche two drams, of Hematites three

The second booke. Fol. clxxi

three drammes, beate all these thynges together, tempering it with the rose Syger, and let her receyue of it in the morning and evening, at eche tyme one dram, with fyre spoonefulls of Plantaine water, or els the water of Bursa pastoris.

Item, take of the stone Hemanites, and rub it on a Barbers whetstone, called a Hone, tyll the Hone seeme red, then walhe it agayne from the Hone with Plantaine water, and so doo often tymes, untill you haue a good quantitie of it, and euery morning let the woman drinke. iiii. or. v. spoonefulls of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Crochishes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Crochishes of Carabe, or Ambie, and the Crochishes of Bole Armentache, which must be ministred a dramme, or more of eyther of them, with. iiii. or. v. spoonefulls of Plantaine water.

who that requirerth further in this matter, let them aske counsaile of the Physicians.

Now if it be so that there be engendered any Apostumie or other disease in the priue places after her labour, then must the Apostumies & diseases be cleansed, purged, and healed, the payne and ache of it mitigated & swaged with the wyce of the berries or leaues of Night-

R. ij.

shade,

The second booke.

shade, and the wyte of Plantane, also the oyle of Roses, so that all those thinges be tempered together, and the places annoynted therewith.

Item other wyse. Take the white of an egge, Womans mylke, the wyte of Purslaine, & temper all these together, and conuey it to the diseased place.

These medicines dorefrigerate & coole the vehement heate wont to be in Apostumes: As for the rest, howe to open, drie, and cleanse suche Apostumations, ye must consult with some Physicion or expert Surgian.

Many tymes also it chaunceth that the fundement gutte commeth forth both in man and woman, and specially in women in this bysinesse, by reason of theyr great labour and stryuyng with them selfe: wherefore in this case it is the Wydwynes part, with her hande warmed, and wet in white wine, to reduce it backe into his place agayne, the whiche yf she can not by this meanes, for because peradventure it be swollen,

then

then let her dissolue Butter in Whyte  
wine warmed, and therein dip wooll,  
with the which wrap the same gutte a  
while, so doing oftentimes, tyll it be  
swaged, that it may be returned in a  
gayne. And ye may vse in the steade of  
white wine luke warme mylke.

And when it is thus returned and reduced  
into this place: Take ware and mixt it together  
with Mastiche or whyte frankensence: then  
spredde it vpon linnen plasterwoyle, and lay it  
ouer the place where it came forth, byndyng  
it to, with a linnen cloth or roller, for parting of.  
And let this be done thus so often as she goeth  
to sleepe, after that she hath doone, vntyll suche  
time that it be so setteled within, that it come no  
more out.

And yf ye wyll not occupie ware: then dyppe  
wooll in the oyle of Mastiche, or of Sphe Mar-  
dy, and lay it vnto the place ouer the fundement;  
byndyng it fast vpon the place, as before.

Item another way. washe and soke the gut  
with the water in which is decocte and sodden  
such thynges which ericate, dry, and constraime  
or combynde: as Galles, Cipres mits, flowres  
of Pomegranade, Ambre, Mastiche, franken-  
sence, Sanguis Draconis, and when it is well  
washed & soaked with this water, then take the  
powder of an Hartes horne burnt, and strue it  
rounde about the gence, and so restore it a gayne

## The second booke.

into his place.

Agayne, sometyne it commeth to passe, that after the womans labour, the Matrix is remoued out of his place, and appeareth forth: then let it be washed & soaked with the water in which be sodden these thynges folowynge.

Take of Cipres nuttes, Sythe narbe, Balau-  
stium, Alooe cuppes, of eche an ounce, of Mes-  
pylles, and bmyrpe wyde beares, and bmyrpe  
Apples, Plummes, and Damais, or Bullasse,  
of eche an handfull. And such of those as be to be  
powdred, beate them to powder, and the rest  
deuyde and cut them small: then seeth them al-  
together in rayne water, or els in water in the  
which Steele beyng red hotte hath been often-  
tymes quenched: and in the same water, let the  
partie bathe her by to the Natell, or els dyppe  
a sponge or a Locke of wooll in it, and there with  
washe and soke the same Matrix oftentimes.  
Then euer with a faire cleane linnen cloth  
wype it cleane agayne, and strewe bypon it the  
powder folowynge, beaten very small, and sear-  
sed through sythe.

Take of frammentence, Carabe, Galles, Balau-  
stium, Cipres nuts, Alooe, Antimony, Bole ar-  
meniacke, Massicke, of eche like much: beate all  
these to very fine powder, & strewe the Matrix  
with it: then tenderly reduce it into his place a-  
gaue with warme linnen clothes binding it by.  
But



The second booke. Fol. lxxi.

But yf so be that the Matrice be swollen, so that by this meanes it wyl not be resto:red to his naturall place agayne: then dissolue Butter in whet & wine, as ye dyd before, and with the same soke it, vnto such tyme as it be swaged, and then reduce it.

Agayne, sometime it chaunceth that the womans Nauell through labour is dissolued, so that it openeth it selfe: then make a small tent of fine linnen, & annoynt it with this oyntment that foloweth, & the same put into the Nauell.

Remedies for  
t: a womans  
Nauell when it  
openeth it selfe,  
for payne in the  
labour.

Take white Frankensence, & beate it to powder, & then temper it with the whyte of an egge, so that it be after the maner of liquid honye; with this annoynt the Nauell within & without, annoyntyng also the tent, the which being put in the hole of the Nauell, binde some cloth ouer it, to keepe it in his place.

Item, many times it chaunceth that thorow the great difficultie & thronges of labour, the priuie part and the fundament become one, by reason of rupture and breaking of the same part in the deuyeraunce of the chylde, and that by that meanes the Matrice descendeth and issueth downe, the whiche thyng chaunceth sometymes, by reason that

How that some-  
tyme the priuie  
part and funde-  
ment become  
one.

## The second booke.

the same place is very narrowe and also tender, and the byrth bygge & of great growth, so that it proceedeth with such violence, that it breaketh the way before it.

When this myshappe falleth, fyrst washe and soke the Matrix, and also reduce it to his place agayne, after the maner as I tolde you here immediatly before: then heale this bracke & wound by solwyng of both sydes of it together agayne with a sylken threede, as Chyrurgians do other woundes: and if that lyke ye not, then may ye cure it otherwys without solwyng, thus.

Take two lytle peeces of linnen cloth, eche of the length of the wounde, and in breadth two fingers brode, spreade the lytle clothes with some fast cleaving plaster, the whiche wyll cause the cloutes to stycke fast where they shalbe set: then fasten them, the one on the one syde of the rift, the other on the other syde, so that nothing appeare betweene the peeces of linnen in the myddes of them, but onely the clyft and ryft of the wounde in the breadth of a strawe. Then (this done) so we the sides of the linnen together close, as before I byd you to so we the skyn: and when they be thus styched together, lay a lytle liquid Pitch

## The second booke. Folxxxij.

Pitche or Tarre vpon the same. And this done the lappes & sydes of the wounde vnder the linnen plaster wyl growe together agayne, & heale: and then may ye remoue your plasters.

¶ Item another way.

Take Camfely dreyed, and beate it to powder, also a litle quantitie of Cinamome beaten to powder, ioyne them together, and strawe of this powder into the wounde, and without faule it shall heale.

### ¶ Of Abortementes, or vntimely

birthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holden, and ealed.

Capit. lvi.



Abortement or vntimely birth is, when the woman is deliuered before due season, and before the fruite be ripe (as in the .iiij. or .v. moneth) before the birth haue lyfe, and sometymes after it hath lyfe it is deliuered before it styrre, being by some chaunce dead in the mothers wombe. Of the which thynges there be many and dyuers causes.

Many causes of vntimely birthes.

First, sometymes the mouth of the  
Matrix

xxxv. The second booke.

Matris is so large & ample, that it can  
not conveniently close it selfe together,  
neither containe the feature, or concep-  
tion: Or els it may be so corrupted and in-  
fected with viscons, stymie, flegmatike,  
and other waterish humours, that the  
cause of boloring, thereof is thereby  
made to slypeth, that the feature con-  
ceyued can not there remayne, but slipp-  
peth and flydeth forth agayne. Also  
sometymes the Matris is apostumated  
and sore, so that for payne it can not con-  
taine the conception.

Item, sometymes the Cotlidons,  
that is, the baines by the which the con-  
ception and feature is tyed and fastened  
in the Matris (thosowe the which also  
the feature receyueth nourishment and  
foode, as is declared in the fyrst booke)  
be stopped with viscons & y<sup>e</sup> humours:  
or els swollen by inflation, so that they  
breake, by the whiche meanes the fea-  
ture destitute of his wont nourishment,  
perisheth & dyeth, and that most com-  
monly in the seconde or thyrde moneth  
after

The second booke. Fol. lxxxiij.

after conception. wherefore Hippocrates  
sayth: All suche women whiche be im-  
pregnate or concerved, being of a meane  
state in their body (that is to say, ney-  
ther so fat or grosse, ne so spare or leane)  
if it chaunce any such to aborte in the se-  
conde or thyrde moneth (no other eui-  
dent cause appearing) knowe ye for cer-  
taine, that it ensueth so, because the Co-  
tindons be opplete, stopped, and stuffed  
with yll humours, and be swollen and  
puffed therewith, that they breake, and  
so consequently the foetus. Oyth for  
fault of foode.

Item, abbatement somethyme com-  
meth by reason that some of the places  
about the matrix be diseased & gretted,  
as if Intestinum rectum, which is called the  
Fundement gut, be ulcerate, having the  
pyles or hemorrhoides, or the vlicke or  
bladder be swollen or encumbered with  
the stone, the strangury, or other euill.  
In these cases though the great laboure  
and paine the which the partie hath in  
endeuorng & enforcyng her selfe other

Abatement by  
reason of cause  
griefe about the  
Matrix.

**The second booke.**

to stoole, or to make Water, be engendered great motions downward, where by many times the handfastnesse of the Conclusions is broken.

Aborcement by  
Tennis.

With aborcement may come of a dis-  
eased tailed Tetanus, the which is when  
one hath ever greasde here and lust to  
the stoole, and yet can do nothing, ne  
with the lesse the parties greatly doe en-  
force and paye themselves to it. And as  
Hippocrates sayth, the pregnant woman  
which hath Tetanus, for the most part  
alwayeth, that is to say, bringeth forth  
her chyld out of tyme.

Aborcement  
chaunged by  
cough.

Item the cough, yf it be greivous,  
causeth the same. And as the forenamed  
excellency physician sayth: suche as are  
very spare and leane, and brought lowe,  
ever more lightly do aboize: for because  
that all the meate and foode the which  
they receyve turneth to foode, nourish-  
ment, and sustentation of theyr whole  
bodies; and for the conception be-  
fitt of foode: wherefore necessarily it  
dyeth.

or

Item,

The second booke. Fol. lxxxiij.

Item, this chaunce also comueth by ouer much bleeding at the nose, or other where, or issuing of the flowres inmoderately. And so sayth Hypocrates, yf the woman peeble flowres after her conception, it can not be that the feature doo long proue, the whiche saying must be vnderstand, yf they flowe vehemently, or that the partie be weake and very spare, or if it be after the thyrde moneth, for it may be well, that in the fyrst and seconde moneth flowres may issue and yet no daunger. For as yet lytle foode & nouryshment satisfieth the conception for the finalenesse thereof.

Item, to be let blood may be the cause of aborcement, whiche must be vnderstande in suche as haue but litle store of blood: but such as haue great coppy and plentie of blood, may without any peryl (if any vrgent cause require it) be let blood, so that it be after the fourth moneth, and before the seuenth. Howbeit, I would that none should be let blood, except some great and wayghthe cause  
dyd



## The second booke.

dyd require it.

Item, it may come by takinge of some strong purgation before the fourth moneth, and after the seventh moneth.

And if it be so that any necessitie do so require that she must needes receyue a purgation, let it be done betwene the fourth and the seventh moneth after the conception, for then may it be with least peryll. And see that the purgation be very gentle and easie.

And this may come by reason of a continuall fluxe, be it blooddy or other wyse, and specially yf the woman be weake & spare, for by that meanes the conception is greatly weakened and perished. And ouermuch vomityng may be cause of abortement, for by ouermuch galpyng & reaching vpwardes, the Collicons may be broken, and so the feaure to perishe.

Item, ouermuch faimure or hunger, and also sharpe and seruent spicuelles may be the cause thereof, as the pestilence, apostumie in the brest, and sodaine pallsie,

pallie, the falling sicknesse, &c. Also ouer-  
much drunkennes, and excesse feedyng  
& surfettyng, by the which the byrth  
is suffocate and strangled in the belly,  
and the foode corrupt for lacke of due  
digestion.

Item, if the birth be sicke by any out-  
warde or inwarde cause, or yf the Se-  
condine in the which the feature is con-  
teyned, do breake before his tyme, and  
the humours and waters of the same  
flow & issue forth, causing the place to be  
slippery, and so the byrth to slyde away  
vntimely: or yf the mother haue taken  
very great cold, or ouer great heat, whi-  
che weakeneth both mother and child.

And therefore ought women with  
chylde to excheue much bathing or go-  
ing to the hot houses in theyr teenyng,  
for that may do hurt thre wayes.

Fyrst, that it kyndleth or enflameth  
the ayre or breath contained in the body,  
and so stryseth the chylde, and sometime  
the mother to.

Secondly, that it relaxeth, dissolneth, &  
looseth

## The second booke.

looseth the Collicons, and so maketh the byrth to issue forth. Thirdly, that the bitter heate of the bath, encrease the inward heate of the body: in so much, that the byrth not beyng able to sustaine and abyde the heate, naturally proceedeth for refrigeration & cooling: but in the tyme, or about the tyme of labour, she may vse bathes, as I declared before, for the redyer and more expedite deliuerance.

*Cause of a-  
bortement by  
mutation of the  
weather.*

Item, the intemperancie and mutation of the ayre and weather, may be cause of abortement. For (as Hypocrates wyrteth) Whensoever the winter is hot and moyste, and the spryng tyde after colde & dry, suche women in that spring tyde may soone & of a lyght cause haue abortement: Or yf they abort not, yet they shalbe deliuered with great paine, and the byrth shalbe very weakie & sicklye, so that it shall dye strayght, or yf it dye not by & by, it shall proue but very slenderly. The cause of the which thing is this.

The second booke. Fol.lxxxvi.

For when that suche wynteryng chaunceth, the hot and moyst weather heateth and moysteth the womans body, and by that the body is opened, vnloosed, & resolved, no lesse then though she were euery day bathed, and bypon this when the spryng time cometh, yf it be colde and drye, findyng the body open and vnloosed after suche sorte, the colde entereth and pearceth the bodye the sooner and the more vehemently: & the byrth feelyng the sodayne colde and change of weather, pineth alway, and dieth in the Mothers belly, or anone after it is deliuered: or yf it lyue, it lyketh not, nor proueth not, and great payne shall it be to keepe lyfe in it.

Item, abortement may happen by ouer muche styring of the body in labouryng, daunsyng, or leapyng, or by some fall or thrust agaynst some wall, or beating, or by some sodaine anger, feare, dread, sorowe, or some sodaine and vnlooked for ioy. Thus haue I rehearsed all the causes of the whiche moste com-

Di


monly

## The second booke.

monly maye ensue aborcement oz vntymely byrth, the whiche no doubt is much more greefe and paine to the woman, then the very natural labour, for such thynges as chaunce to man oz woman contrary to nature, oz before nature doth require it, is farre greater greefe, then the same happenyng and conning in his due season.

Signes wherby ye may knowe aborcement.

Tokens to knowe  
the aborcement.

hen the woman shall labour before her tyme, these signes are wont to goe before. First her brests which before were hole, sounde, & full, shall begin to waxe lesse, to fal, and to flagge, and then euer for the most part aborcement foloweth. But if it be so that she go with two children at once, if one of the brestes swage, which before was in good lykynge, the other remayning sounde and safe, then loke of what side the brest is of, and the chyld of that syde is in peryll. Wherefore Hippocrates wryteth, yf the ryght brest slake oz flagge, the masculyne oz male

male byrth is in peryl: yf the left, the female byrth, because that for the moſte part when there be two at once, the one is masculine, and the other feminine: the man lyeth in the ryght ſyde, and the woman in the left moſt commonly.

Also another ſigne of abortement is: when the woman hath great paynes and dolours of the Matrix, and that ſhe begyn to ware redde in the face, and all partes of the body to ſhake & tremble, as though it were in a fever, or the palſie in the head. Item when ſhe feeleth great ache in the inner part of the eyes toward the braines, the reſt of the body taken as it were with a weermes, without any outward apparant cauſe why: theſe thynges portende and ſignifie abortement to be at hande, ſpecially yf at the ſame tyme the flowres iſſue alſo.

Item yf the womans body do ſwell and inflate with a certayne hardneſſe or ſtiffneſſe, and that ſhe feele ſtytches, and as it were ventroſitie or wynde, runnyng from one ſyde of the bodye

## The second booke.

to the other, and yet the belly notwithstanding, being nothyng the more ponderous or wayghtie, and that the same inflation do persist and continue anye whyle, the woman takyng and eatyng suche thynges whiche haue vertue to discusse and vanquish the ventositie and wyndynesse: this thyng I say dooth betoken peryll of abortement through ventositie and inflation, and that cheefely about the thyrde or fourth moneth after the conception.

Thus haue I sufficiently declared euident and sufficient signes, whereby may be provided and foreseene the abortement before it come. Nowe Wyl I shew you the remedies wherby it may be auerted and let.

Remedies  
whereby to  
a-  
void abortement.

The cheefe remedie to auoyd abortement is, to shun all such thynges whiche may be cause of it, the whiche I haue competently entreated of alreedy: but yf ye feare abortement, because that the mouth of the matrix be ouer ample and large,



The second booke. Fol. lxxxviii.

large, then must ye vse suche thynges  
whose operation is to contrahē, con-  
strayne, and bring together, as Bathes,  
Fumigations, Oyntmentes, Plasters,  
Odours, and suche lyke, of the whiche  
I haue spoken before, and such thynges  
the which repressē and stynte the flow-  
ers flowyng ouer muche after the  
birth.

Agayne, yf ye feare this peryll, be-  
cause the mouth of the Matrix is moyst  
and slipperie, other because that the co-  
llicons be replētē and fulfilled with  
viscous humours, and with inflations  
or ventosities: then may ye defende it by  
vsling of suche thynges whose qualities  
be to purifie, clense, exicate, or drye, and  
to repressē ventosities, whereof also we  
haue made mention here before.

Howbeit, in all this matter, let not  
to make some expert Phisition of your  
counsaile, yf ye may haue suche one, for  
because that manye suche thynges come,  
and not all by one way or meane.

And yf ye doubte peryll for because

¶ iii

that

The second booke.

that the Matrix or other places about  
be infected, exulcerated, or apostumate,  
or hauyng the stone or strangury, and  
suche other thynges: then aske and vse  
the aduise of some well learned medi-  
cine, and he shall shewe you howe all  
thynges shalbe cured.

If agayne ye feare abhorment be-  
cause the partie is very weake and lony  
brought, then let her feede on such thin-  
ges the which moyse and nother the  
wel or fatten the bodi, as Capons fleshe,  
Kidd, Lamine, young Chale, Partridge,  
and such other.

Agayne, if the woman be taken with  
any sharpe and fell disease, then let her  
be cured of the same as shortly as can  
be, with such thynges the which apper-  
tayne to the curing of such disease: or if  
she haue susteyned any long famine or  
hunger, then let her be fedde with good  
meates and drinckes moderately taken:  
and if she haue surfatted by ouermuche  
eatynge and drynkyng (as now a  
dayes most commonly people do) then

let

let her abstayne for a tyme, and if it may be conveniently done, let her receaue some easy and gentle medicine, whiche maye alleuate and lyghten her of her surfestyng burthen, especially by vomiting, for the whiche purpose, geue her halfe a pynt of water like warme, wherein hath ben sodden two sponesfuls of clarified hony, and then afterwarde yf it come not of it selfe, with her synger or with a fether put into her throte, let her prouoke her selfe to vomite.

Nowe yf it be so that the woman abounde in blood, then shall it be very good a litle to let her blood, both for her selfe, and also for the birth, whiche thowwe ouer muche aboundaunce of it, myght happen to be suffocated & strangled: of the whiche thing also I haue spoken largely before.

Furthermore, yf the woman feare aboymeint by reason of continuall cough, or ouermuche vomite and parbreaking, or the fluxe, or of the disease called *Tenasmus*, or of ouermuche illuyng

## The second booke.

of blood, whether it be by the nose, or other partes of the body, aske the aduise of a Physitian for remedie, yf for the fragilitie, tender nesse, and bracke of the secondine, the feare this aboꝛement, for because that in this case the secondine shall not be able to holde and contayne the byrth. As for this, there is no other medicine to defende it, but only that the partie take heede that shee hurt not her selfe by ouermuch mouyng or stirryng, as by labouryng, daunsing, runnyng, standyng, faste goyng, or carryng of ponderous and wayghtie thynges, or lyfryng of the same. And to be short, let her with all warynesse take heede and be diligent that she excheue and abstayne from all suche thynges the whiche myght cause and induce aboꝛement.

Of dead birthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowne, and by what medicines it may alle be expelled. Chap. x.

It

**I**f I shalbe nowe conuenient for  
 vs to speake of dead birthes,  
 howe it shalbe knowen that  
 they be dead, and howe they  
 may be expelled from the mother.

*Signes to  
 knowe whether  
 the child be  
 dead in the mo-  
 thers wombe.*

**S**ignes then that the byrth is dead in the mo-  
 thers wombe, be these.

i. Fyrst, yf the mothers brestes do so-  
 denly slake, as I touched before.

ii. If it moue it selfe no more, beyng  
 wont before to styre.

iii. If when the mother turneth her  
 from the one side to y other, she feele it  
 falling from thone side to the other like  
 a stone or a dead wayght.

iiii. If her belly and nauyll begyn to  
 ware colde, which before was wont to  
 be temperately hotte.

v. If any stynkyng and fylthy humours  
 flowe from the Matrix, and  
 cheefely after some fell disease.

vi. If the womans eyes ware holow,  
 & that her colour chaunge from whyte  
 to Mart and dymme colour, and that  
 her eyes and nose ware astonyed, and  
 haue

The second booke.

haue not their ryght vse, and her lippes  
waxe wanne.

vii. If beneath the Nauell and about  
the secrete partes she feele great throng  
& payne, the colour of her face chaunge-  
yng into worse and worse, otherwyle  
then it was wont to do.

viii. If she haue appetite to eate suche  
thynges whiche be agaynst nature, and  
not wont to be eaten or drunken.

ix. If she be in her sleepe vexed with  
bayne and terrible dreames.

x. If she be payned continuallye with  
the strangurye, or that she enforce her  
selfe much to the stoole, and with al her  
powber, and yet can not do any thing.

xi. If her breath begin to stynke, the  
whiche thyng lightly happeneth two  
or three dayes after the birth be dead.

xii. If the handes put into very warme  
water, and then layde on the womans  
belly, and the childe stirre not, is a signe  
that it is dead.

Of all these signes now, the more  
that come together of them at one  
time

tyne and in one person, the surer may  
 ye be that the birth is dead, the whiche  
 beyng once dead, all diligence muste be  
 hadde that it may be expelled out of the  
 womans body.

But here must ye see agayne whether  
 it may be expelled, the Mothers lyfe sa-  
 ued or no: for sometyme it chaunceth  
 that the Mother dyeth withall, and  
 sometymes the Mother doth well and  
 prospereth.

Whether the Mother shalbe in perill  
 withall, or no, by these thynges shall  
 ye knowe. If the woman beyng in the  
 labour somtyme or feare, as though she  
 were in a traunce: if her remembraunce  
 fayle her, and she were feeble and scant  
 able to moue or stirre her selfe: yf she  
 (called with a loude voyce) can an-  
 swere nothyng at all, or els verpe li-  
 tle, and that very softly, as though her  
 voyce began to fayle her: if she be inua-  
 ded or taken among in the labouryng  
 with conuulsion or shrynkelynge toge-  
 ther: if she refuse or cannot brooke meate:  
 yf

To knowe  
 whether the mo-  
 ther shalbe in  
 perill or no.



## The seconde booke.

Yf her pulses beate very fast, the which signes whē ye see in the woman labouryng, it is an euident token that she shal not lyue long after her deliuerance, wherfore commit the cure of her to the handes of almyghtie God: but yf none of these signes doo appeare, then haue good hope, for the woman shal do wel, the byrth beyng once departed: wherfore geue all diligence to the expulsion of it, that the woman maye be deliuered of this dead burden, the whiche thynge maye be done by two wayes, eyther by medicines expulsive, or els by certayne instrumentes made for the nonce.

Two meanes  
to expel the  
dead bgyrthes.

First withoute instrumentes, with this fumigation. Take eyther the houe or dongue of an Asse, and put it on coles, and let the woman receaue the fume vnderneath.

Another.

Take the skynne of an Adder, Myrr, Castoriū, Brimstone, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, Madder that the Dyers occupie, Digeon donge, or Hawkes donge, beate al these to powder, & temper the with Oxe gal, & make pylls of it, eche the quantitie of a sylberde mitte, and then put one after another

another in the coales, and receiue the fume thoro-  
rowe a pype or conduite made for that purpose  
into the priuities.

Another. Take Cincense, Oppoponacum, Galba-  
num, Brimstone, of eche like muche, beate them  
together, and temper them with Ore gall, and  
make pilles of them, and then of the same make  
fumigations as before.

A posion for the same purpose. Take Asafetida  
halfe a diam, of Rue three diams, of Myrthe two  
diams, and beate them to powder, and geue to  
the woman at eche tyme a diam of this powder  
with white wine, or with water in the whiche  
Saurine is sodden.

Another. Take figges, Senegreke, Oganie,  
and seethe them in water, the whiche geue vnto  
the woman to drynke: for this drynke well en-  
gender lubricitie and slyppernesse in the heather  
partes, and ble also some of those thynges which  
haue vertue to prouoke the byrth, whereof we  
entreated before.

Item, certayne pessaries or suppositaries con-  
cerning the same. Take Gumme, Ammoniacke,  
Oppoponacum, Heleborns niger, Staphylager,  
Aristolochia longa, and Colocinthas without his  
herneles, beate all these thynges together, tempe-  
ring them with Ore gal, and also with the iuyce  
of fresh Rue, then make a pessarie of wollen, and  
aninoynt and wet the pessarie with the same,  
conueying it into the secreete places.

Item another. Make a pessarie of wollen, of  
the length and thichnesse of a fynger, and dyppe  
it

## The second booke.

it in the succre of Rue in the whiche is dissolved a quantitie of Scammonie, and doo with that pessarie as before.

Item, take Aristolochia rotunda, Savine, garden Cresses, of eche lyke muche, beate them to powder, and temper them with Dre gall, with this annoynt a pessarie made and ordered as before is spoken of.

Item, yf the woman drynke the mylke of another woman, it wyll styre and expell the birth.

Item, take of the succre of Wittayne, or of the powder of the roote of the same hearbe, two drams, and geue the same to drynke to the woman with wine, except she be in great heate, for then shal ye geue it her with luke warme water, and this shal expell the dead birth without any perill of the Mother.

Item, take of Myrhe foure drammes, of Cynamome, Galbanum, Castorium, of eache two drams, of Oppoponacum, one dramme, all those beateu & tempered together with Dre gal, make pilles of them, making eche of them a dramme, and with the succre of chole, perfume the neather partes, by this vapour the dead birth is brought forth, inflation and suffocation of blood is expelled.

Item, take of water Minte, Spothern wood, Mugwurt, of eche a handfull, of Asphaltum halfe an ounce, of Madder, two ounces and an halfe, of Camemel, Dozehounde, fenegreke, of eche two ounces, see the al these thynges togeather in raine

## The second booke. Fol. xciii.

rayne water, in the which let the woman bath  
her selfe: then take of Hennes grece and Duckes  
grece, of eche foure drammes, to the which ad  
two ounces of oyle of Dyll seede, with this ornt-  
ment annoynt the womans head commyng out  
of the bath, then take Date stones, and beate  
them to powder, a dramme and an halfe, with a  
scruple of Saffron tempered together with  
whyte wyne, the which let her immediatlye  
drynke after she come forth of the bath.

Item, take Oppoponacum, and make thereof a  
pellarye, the quantitie of a synger, conuey it in-  
to the priuities, this expelleth the dead byrth.

Item, take of Galbanum a dram or somewhat  
lesse, of Goates mylke an ounce and a halfe, or  
two ounces, in the which the Galbanum beyng  
dissolued, geue it to the woman to drynke.

Item, a plaster for the same. Take Galbanum  
beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Mother-  
wort, and of this make a plaster by puttynge to of  
more a certayne quantite: then take a linnen  
cloth of suche length and breadth that it may co-  
uer al the belly vnder the Hauell to the priuities,  
from one syde to the other, on this cloth spreade  
this plaster of the thiknesse of a strawe, and lay  
it to the belly.

Item, take the Triacle which is called Dia-  
tesarum, & geue of it to the woman for to drynke,  
and it will expel the dead byrth.

But yf all these medicines profyte not, then  
must

## The second booke.

musste be bled more seuer and harde remedies  
with instrumentes, as hokes, tongues, and suche  
other thynges made for the nonce. And sythe  
the woman musste be layde a long byrght, the  
middle parte of her bodye lying hyer then all the  
rest, companied of women assisting her about,  
to comfort her, and to keepe her downe, that  
when the byrth is plucked out, she ryse not with-  
all. Then let the Midwyfe annoynt her lefte  
hande with the oyle of whyte Lillies, or other  
that may make it supple and smothe, and hol-  
ding out her fingers, shutting together her hand,  
let her put it into the Matrice, to feele and per-  
ceyue after what fashion the dead byrth lyeth in  
the Mothers wombe, so that she may the better  
put in hokes, and suche other instrumentes to  
plucke it out withall.

If so be that it lye the head forward, then  
fasten a hooke eyther bypon one of the eyes of  
it, or the roose of the mouth, or vnder the chin,  
or on one of the shoulders, whiche of these partes  
shall seeme moste commodious and handsome  
to take it out by, and the hooke fastened, to  
drawe it out very tenderlye for hurtyng of the  
woman.

But if it lye the feete forewarde, then fasten  
the hooke on the bone above the priue partes  
or by some rybbe, or some of the backe bones, or  
of the brest bones; and when this hooke is thus  
fastened, the midwyfe may not by and by drawe  
and plucke at it, but holdyng it in her lefte  
hande

hande, let her with her ryght hande fasten another in some other part of the byrth, ryght agaynst the fyist, and then tenderly let her drawe both together, so that the byrth may proceede and come forth on both sydes equally, mouyng it from one syde to another, tyll ye haue gotten out altogether, and nowe and then to helpe it in the comyng forth with the forefynger well annoynted, yf it chaunce to stycke, or to be lette any where: and as it commeth forth, alway to remoue the hookes farther and farther on the dead byrth.

Agayne, yf it chaunce that one of the handes only of the byrth do appeare, and that it can not conueniently be reduced and returned bywarde agayne, by reason of the narrownesse of the place, then bynde it with a linnen cloth that it styppe not by agayne, and then to plucke it outwarde untill such tyme that the whole arme be out, and then with a sharpe knyfe cut it of from the body: and euen so do yf both handes appeare fyist at once, or one legge, or both, yf they can not be returned backe to be otherwyse taken out conueniently. As ye cutte the armes from the shoulders, so lyke wyse cuttyng the legges from the thyghes, for the which purpose the Chirurgicalians haue meete instrumentes made for the nonce, with the which such legges & armes may soone be cut from the body. These partes beinge nicely resecte and cut from the body, then turne the rest, so that it may easely proceede, with as litle payne to the mother as may be.

## The second booke.

If it be so that the chyldes head be so swollen by inflation, swelling, or resort of humours, that it wyl not conveniently issue out at that narrowe place: Then let the Mdywfe with a sharpe penknyfe cutte open the head, that the humours conteyned in it may issue and runne forth, and so the head to waxe lesse, able to be plucked out: But if it be so, that (not by any suche casualltie) the head be bygge but onely of a naturall growth, then must the head be broken in peeces, and the partes euermore taken forth with suche instrumentes as the Chirurgians haue ready and necessary for suche purposes.

Agayne, yf that after the head were come forth, yet the brest part woulde not folowe for greatnesse: Then must ye breake and cut lyke wyse that part, vnto suche tyme that it may be had forth. And euen so lyke wyse yf all the rest of the body shoulde be so swollen that it woulde not proceede ne come forth: then must it lyke wyse be broken in peeces, and so had forth.

Furthermore, yf by chaunce or disease it come to passe, that the mouth of the Matrix be excoriated or appostumate, so that the passage be made the narrower by that meanes, the dryer, and the more contract: then must ye first studie and endeuour you to supple and ease the places by oyles and other greaces, suche as I spake of sufficiently before in the fourth Chapter, with bathes and fumnigations.

Allo yf the dead byrth come sydelong, then must



must ye do what may be done to conuert and turne it to suche fashyon, that it may most easily be brought forth. The Matrix and other secretes must be annointed, perfumed, and vapoured with suche thynges the which may make it more ample and large. If it can not be thus had forth whole, then let it be cutte out by peece meale, as is before spoken of. And yf after this deluyraunce the flowres issue ouer vehemently, then vse suche thynges as haue vertue to restrayne them, of the whiche I haue spoken in the vi. Chapter before.

But contrary to all this, yf it chauce that the woman in her labour dye, and the chyld haung lyfe in it: then shall it be meete to keepe open the womans mouth, and also the neather places, so that the chyld may by that meanes both receyue and also expell ayre and breath, whiche otherwyle myght be stopped, to the destruction of the chyld: And then to turne her on the left syde, and there to cut her open, and so take out the chyld. They that be borne after this fashyon are called Césars, for because they be cutte out of their mothers

belly: wherupon also the noble

Romayne Cesar the first

toke his name.

## The second booke.

**I**n the last Chapter of this booke be briefly  
recited certayne expert medicines, whiche be  
most requisite to the chiefe purpose  
entended in this present  
booke. Cap. x.



Ordonuiche as the principall en-  
tent and ende of this booke is, to  
shewe the meanes and medici-  
nes whereby the womans la-  
bour may be made the more ea-  
sie : therefore here I will com-  
pendiously set forth certayne medicines, oint-  
mentes and emplasters, suche as shalbe suffici-  
ent and moste requisite to that purpose, and  
suche agayne as hath been well experimented  
and practised : The whiche also it shalbe conue-  
nient (for them that may) alwayes to haue in  
a redynesse agaynst theyr tyme of neede. For  
although that Nature be the chiefe and head  
doer in all this busynesse (as in conception, bea-  
ryng, and the byrth :) yet notwithstanding, me-  
dicines many tymes do helpe, arde, and fortifie  
Nature, beyng sometime impedit and let, yea,  
impotent and not able to do her office as should  
appertayne.

When the tyme then of the womans labour  
is come, yf she labour long and paynefully, and  
yet the byrth do not procede : then for the more  
expedite and quicke despueraunce, geue her of  
this medicine folowynge.

Take of the fynest Cinamome that may be  
chosen

The second booke. Fol. xvi.

chosen. iiii. drammes, and with a sharpe knyfe  
fyst thred it in very small peeces, and then beate  
it to very fyne powder.

Item, of Saffron dyed by the fyre tyll it be  
blackyshe, of Cassia lignea, fyne Reubarde, Sa-  
uine dried, Myrhe, of ech of these seuen scruples,  
of pure Muske. xvi. graynes, euer of these sim-  
ples exquisitely by them selues powdred, & then  
perfectly myxed in one, with. vi. oz. vii. droppes  
of Maluele, temper the whole masse into lytle  
roundels or trochiskes, eche wayung a dramme.  
And in tyme of neede at the womans labour,  
geue her hardy the wayght of. vi. d. of these tro-  
chiskes beaten into fine powder, with. iiii. spon-  
fulles of Dyllope water, and other. iiii. of good  
wine secke.

This medicine is not onely profitable at this  
tyme to promote the byrth, but also is notably  
good to expell the after byrth, or any other suche  
lyke matter in that place, haupng neede of ex-  
pulsion.

Item, yf neede do so require, it shalbe very  
expedient to haue this emplaster folowyng in  
a rednesse, the which spread abroad vpon a lyn-  
nen cloth either els vpon leather, and so applied  
to the bottome of the belly in as large maner  
as may be, dilateth and openeth the pores of  
that partes, amplifieth, enlargeth, & dissolueth  
them, whereby that that is contained in the bel-  
ly syndeth the freer issue, to the lesse greuousance  
of the mother.

Take of Emplastrum de Melliloto, of Diachilon,

p. iiii.

of

## The second booke.

of Oxyroceum, of ech two ounces, of the rootes of Alarum, of wyldc Peppe dyed, the leaues of Bemioim, of tosted Cummin, of eche two drams, of good Castorium, .iii. drams, of the oyle of Wyll one or two spoonefulles: Such of these as are to be powdred, beate them fyne, and then ouer a soft fyre temper them altogether perfectly.

Item, the same emplaster may serue to be layde ouer all the bottome of the belly and the priuite passage, to prouoke and drawe forth the latter or hynder birth yf neede be: But yf that be not strong enough, then lay to this plaster following, which is of muche more efficacie, force, and strength.

Take of Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Seraphinū, Myrre, of eche an ounce, of Colloquintida, Heleborus niger, of eche two drams, of Castorium, Perethrum, & Storax liquida, of ech three drams, of Turpentine and Petroleum, of eche foure drammes, fyrt ouer a soft fyre temper the Turpentine, Petroleum, & Storax liquida, together, then thereto adde Colloquintida, Heleborus, Castorium and Perethrum, beyng fyrt well and fynely beaten to powder: after put to the Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum and Myrre, beyng fyrt dissolued in good Maluesey, and so take it from the fyre, and labour it with your handes. This plaster is of great effecte to prouoke the after birth.

Item, vnset Leekes stamped and fryed with butter, and so layed plaster wyle to the belly serueth well for the same.

Item,

## The second booke.      Fol. xlvij.

Item, the leaues or flowres of Marygoldes drinke with whyte wine, expell the after birth. Also the sayde leaues and flowres dyed, and at tyme of neede, kyndled with a ware candle, and the smoke thereof receyued vnderneath into the priue part, prouoketh out marueylously the after birth.

Item, a comfortable potion, to be taken after the deliuerance of the chyld.

Take of the sweetest garden Myntes, greene or dry, of the leaues of Baume, greene also or dry, of the leaues of Maioram, the rootes of fenell, the pyth taken out, the flowres of Buglos, of Rosemarie, of Ruds, of Borage, and of dyed red Rose leaues, of eche of these halfe a handfull, more or lesse as it pleaseth you, of Cloues and Male bruised a lytle, the wayght of two pence, of Cinamome shredde in small portions the wayght of .vi. grotes, kyt all these together in a cloute or lytle linnen bagge, and hang the same bagge in a quart of Borage water the space of a day and a nyght: then take out the sayde bagge, and reserve the water, of the whiche take one halfe, and the other halfe of pure wine Secke, or els Muscadell: and beyng myxt together, put thereto a lytle of the conserue of Barberies, conserue of Borage flowres, conserue of Rosemarie flowres, and drinke hereof euery day the space of foure or fyue dayes, at once foure spoonefulls of the water, and other foure of the foresayde wyne. And this potion shall both comforte the woman, and also helpe  

p.iiii.                      greatly

## The second booke.

greatly to the expulſion of all noyſome thynges to be expelled.

And here it is worthy to be noted, that where as it is a common uſage to geue often to women in their chyldbed caudels of Dtemeale, thyn-  
kyng and ſaying thereby the woman to be ſcou-  
red, whereas in deede the ſayde Dtemeale is a  
notable bynder and dyer: Therefore ye ſhall vn-  
derſtande, that the ryght uſe thereof is, to geue it  
to ſuch as haue already been well and ſufficiently  
ſcourd and cleaſed from theyr after byrth, and  
other thynges to be looked for in this tyme and  
caſe: but yf the woman be not ſufficiently pur-  
ged already, then geue her no Dtemeale caudels,  
ne other thynges that may bynde.

And thus I make an ende, praying the wo-  
men readers hereof, to accept and ſuffiſe them-  
ſelues with theſe ſewe medicines here in this  
Chapter mentioned, and often by me and other  
practiſed. The which thyng yf they ſhall do ſo, it  
ſhall (no doubt) be occaſion to me the ſooner to  
retake this matter in hande agayne, and to re-  
freſh and furniſhe the ſame with new and much  
more excellent experiences then hath been yet  
hitherto read or ſcene in any booke concerning  
ſuch matters.

And as touching the aboue Trochiſkes and em-  
plaſters deſcribed here in this place, ye ſhall  
ſynde them alwayes redy made  
in Buchlers berie in  
London.

In this first Chapter of the thirde booke, is first declared the matters therein conteyned, and then how the Infant newly borne must be handled, nourished, and looked to. Cap. i.



In the seconde Booke  
We haue sufficientlie  
and at length declared  
the maners, fashyons,  
and diuersities of byrthes,  
with the daungers & per-

What is to be  
done when the  
chylde is borne.

rylles often chaunsyng to the Women at theyr labours, and after the same. And now here in this third booke shall be entreated what is to be done to the Infant borne. And howe to choose a Nurse, and of her office: With many folde medicines and remedies agaynst sundry infirmities, which eftsones happen to Infantes in their infancie.

Then after that the Infant is once come to light, by and by the Hauell must be cutte three fyngers breadth from the belly, and so knyt vp, and let be strued on the head of that that remaineth, of the powder of Bole Armeniacke, & Sanguis draconis, Sarcocola, Myrthe, & Cummin, of eche lyke muche beaten to powder: then vpon that binde a peece of wooll, dypped in oyle Oliue  
that



### The thirde booke.

that the powder fall not of. Some ble fyft to  
hnyet the Nauell, and after to cutte it so much, as  
is before rehearsed.

And farthermore some say, that of  
what length the rest of the Nauell is  
left, of the same length shall the chyldes  
tong be, yf it be a man chyld. Item, Aui-  
cenna sayth, that diuers thinges may be  
knowen by markyng of the chyldes  
Nauell; For (as he saith) When the wo-  
man is deliuered of her fyft chyld, then  
behold the Nauell of the chyld: Which  
yf in that part of it whiche is next vnto  
the body it haue neuer a wrinkle, it pro-  
tendeth & doth signifie perpetuall fruit  
thencefoorth sterilitie or barenesse: and  
yf it haue any wrinkles in it, then so ma-  
ny wrinkles, so many chyldren shall the  
woman haue in tyme to come. Also  
some ad to this, and say, that if there be  
lytle space betweene these wrinkles in  
the Nauell, then shall there be also litle  
space betweene the bearing of the chyl-  
dren: if much, it signifieth long time be-  
tweene the bearyng of them: but these  
sayynges be neyther in the Gospell of  
the day, ne of the nyght.

Now

# The thirde booke. Fol. ccc.

Now to returne to our purpose, when that the Hauell is cut off, and the rest kept drye, annoynt all the chyldes body with the oyle of Olives, for that is singularly good to confirme, stedfast, and to defende the body from noysonne thynges; whiche may chaunce from without, as huote, colde, and such other thynges, whiche if the Infant be greened withall straight after the birth, beyng yet very tender, it shoulde hurt it greatly.

After this annoynting, wase the Infante with warme water, and with your finger (the nayle beyng pared) open the chyldes nostrils, and purge them of the fylthynesse. And also that the Nurse handle so the chyldes lyping place, that it may be prouoked to purge the belly. And chiefly it must be defended from cōtrarye cold, or ouermuch heate.

After that the parte extant of the knot of the Hauell is fallen (the which commonly chaunceth after the thyrde or fourth day) then on the rest remaynyng, strewe the powder of Almes of a Calles hoose burnt, or of Mayle shelles, or of the powder of lead, called red lead, tempered with wine.

Furthermore, when the Infant is swaddled and layde in Cradell, the Nurse must geue all diligence and helpe that the bynde neuer part ryght, and in his due place and order, and that with all tendernesse and gentle entreating, and not crookedly and confusely, the whiche

## The thirde booke.

By the onely  
negligence of  
Nurses many  
chylde groweth  
crooked backed,  
and wy legged

also must be done ostentymes in the day, for in this is it, as it is in young and tender ymages, plantes, and wyggges: the which, euen as ye haue them in their youth, so wyl they euermore remayne vnto age. And euen so the Infant, yf it be bounde and swadled, the members lying ryght and straght, then shall it grow straght and byryght. If it be crookedly handled, it wyl growe lyke wyse. And to the yll negligence of many Nurses, may be imputed the crookedness: and deformitie of many a man and woman, which other wyse myght seeme as well fauoured as any other.

Item, let the chyldes eyes be ostentymes wy-  
ped and cleansed with a fine and cleane linnen  
cloth, or with sylke. And let the armes of the In-  
fant be kept straght layde downe by the sydes,  
that they may growe ryght, and sometime stro-  
king the belly of the chyld, before the belyche or  
bladder, to helpe to ease, & to prouoke the chyld  
to the making of water: and when ye lay it in  
the Cradell to sleepe, sette the Cradell in suche a  
place, that neither the beames of the Sunne by  
day, neither the Moone by night come on the  
Infant, but rather set it in a darke and shadowy  
place, laying also the head vnder somewhat hyer  
then the rest of the body.

And farther, let it be bathed thre or thye-  
tymes in the day, at that tyme after sleepe, in the  
winter with hotte water, in the summer with  
like warme water: neither let it tary long in the  
water, but vnto suche tyme as the body begyn-  
to

to ware red for heate, but take hede that none of the water come into the Infantes eares, for that should greatly hurt his hearing another way.

Then, to be short, when it is taken out of the bath, let it be wypped and dyled with gentle and soft linnen clothes warmed, and then to lay it on her lappe the backe bywarde, the whiche with her handes let her tenderly stroke and rub, and then to lappe it by, and to swaddell it, and when it is swaddled, to put a droppe or two of water into the nolethrylles of it, is very good for the eye syght. And so to lay it to rest.

Of the Nurse and her mylke, and how long the chyld should sucke. Cap. ii.



Concerning the bringing up, nourishment, and getting of sucke to the chyld, it shalbe beste that the mother geue her chyld sucke her selfe, for the mothers mylke is more conueniente & agreeable to the Infant, then any other woman, and more doth it nouryssh it, for because that in the mothers belly it was wont to the same, and fed with it, and therefore also it doth more desyrouly couet the same, as that with the which it is best acquainted. And to be short, the mothers mylke is most hollownesse for the chyld.

The mothers mylke best and most familiar to the chyld.

# 1107 The thirde booke.

chylde, as Auerquina wyrteth, it shalbe sufficient  
to geue it such a rowle of thys in a day. And al-  
wayes be ware & geue not the chylde to muche  
sucke at once in this tender age of it, for cloy-  
ing of it, and least also it loth it: but rather let  
it haue often of it, and lytle at once, then fewe  
tymes, and ouermuche at once. For suche as be  
ouier cloyde with the mothers mylke, causeth  
theyr body to swell & inflate, and in theyr brine  
shall it appeare, that it is not overcome ne con-  
cocted or digested in the chylde: which thynge yet  
if it chaunce, let the Infant be kept fastyng vntyl  
such tyme as that which it hath receyued al-  
redy be completely digested.

Item, yf the mothers mylke be somewhat  
tharpe or choleryke, let her neuer geue the chylde  
her brest fastyng. If it be so that the mother  
cannot geue the Infant sucke her selfe, eyther  
for because of synnelle, or that her brestes be  
sore, and her mylke corrupted: then let her chosse  
a hollowe Nurse, with these conditions folow-  
ing.

To chosse a good  
Nurse.

First, that she be of a good colour and com-  
plexion, and that her bulke and brest be of good  
largenesse. Secondly, that it be not to soone ne  
to long after her labour, so that it be two mo-  
nethes after her labour at the least, and that (yf  
it may be) she be whole hath a maist chylde.  
Thirdly, that she be of meane and measturable  
thyng, neither to fatte ne to leane. Fourthly,  
that she be good and honest of conuersation,  
neither caltish nor of yf full, ne to fadde or so-  
lome,

Is me, neyther to fearefull, or tymorous: for these affections and qualities be pernicious and hurtfull to the mylke, corruptyng it, and passe forth through the mylke into the chyld, making the chyld of lyke condition and maners. Also that they be not over lyght and wanton of behauiour. fyfthly, that her brestes be full, and haue sufficient plentie of mylke, and that they be neyther to great, soft, hangyng, and saggyng, ne to lytle, hard, or contracte, but of a measurable quantitie.

Also looke vppon her mylke, that it be not blackyshe, blewyshe, gray, or reddysh, neyther to wex, sharpe, saltyshe, or brackyshe, neyther thynne and fluy, neyther ouer grosse & thicke, but temperately whyte, and pleasaunt in taste.

The considera-  
tion of the  
Nurses mylke.

And to be shurt, that mylke is best and most to be chosen, of the whiche a droppe beyng mylhed softly vpon the nayle of the thumbe, belonyng your synger styll, it rolleth not of, neyther flyteth abroade, but yf ye moue your hande a lytle it wyll slide of by and by: but yf when it is mylhed on the nayle it wylleade abroade, and flye by and by, then is it to thyn, but yf it cleaue styll when that ye moue a lytle your hande, then is it to thicke and thicke. The meane betweene both is best.

It is be so that the Nurses mylke be to hotte, sharpe, or colerische: then let her neuer geue the chylde sucke, her selfe beyng fastyng.

Sometymes it chaunceth, that the mothers or Nurses mylke doth fayle or decrease, the  
whyche

## The thirde booke.

*Diners causes  
of the defect or  
scurving of milke*

Which thing may come by diuers causes: as by Mellicelle, by disease in the brestes, or by taking of cold in the same, and to stoppe and clunder the milke, or for because the lacketh such thinges the which myght engender mylke, other by ouermuch fastyng, hunger, & thyrst, the which causes must be well considered: and then accordyng to that, minister a remedie.

*Things which do augment and encrease mylke be these.*

Let her be to eate Barlemy, eyther the seede or the roote: also the seede or roote of fenyll, sodden in the broth made with Barley or Cicercolla, let her eate of that with other meates that he feedeth on.

Item, to eate sheepes brestes, and the mylke of them is good.

Item, take an ounce of yowe butter, and dissolve it in warme white wine, the which let the Nurse drinke.

Item, boryng vnder the brestes doth well, without scarification.

Item, a plaster for the same of frankincense, myrrour, and gillie, layde to the brestes, or vnder the brestes, the same tyme it being annoynted with oyle, lest it shoulde cleaue ouer fast to the plate.

Item, it shalbe very good to rubbe softly with the hande the brestes, or els in bastyng after dinner or supper, to cause mylke to sucke her brest.

Item, take the oyle of white Lymes, or of piolettes, and myngle with it Bushe, Essence, and



and Laudanum, well tempered together, in the same dippe a peece of wooll, and clappe it to the brestes, and soke them with it.

Item, washe them, and soke them often tymes with wine, in the whiche is decocte and sodden Mintes, Roses, violetttes, and Xiloaloes. Also to eate of the broth in the whiche is sodden a Hen, with Cinamome, Maces, Cardamomum, & also the yolke of an egge.

Item, it is good for her to eate freshe Cheese and mylke, and to refrayne from all maner of great labour and harde workes.

Also pottage made of beane meale, ryce and bread made of fyne flowre, tempred with Milke and Suger, puttyng to it also a quantitie of fenell seede, or of the leaues, is very good for her.

Item, take of Annis seede, of Siler montanū, of eche three drams, of Christall beaten to powder two drams, & as muche of Suger, geue her this to drynke about ten dayes, at mornynge, euening, and midday.

Item, take of fenell seede, or the leaues, & of Horehounde, of eche two handfulls, of Annis seede foure drams, of Saffron beaten one scruple, also of freshe Butter three ounces, and seethe all these in sufficient water, making hereof a plaster, the same plaster whilst it is hot, lay it to the Purses breste.

Item, take of Commin seede an ounce and an halfe, of clarified Hony three ounces, seethe it in fyue pyntes of water, altogether put into a newe pot, and let it seeth to the thyrde part, and

## The thyrde booke.

of this decoction geue the Nurse often tymes to drynke.

Item, take of Beetes well washed one ounce, of commun halfe an ounce, of Honye fyre ounces, of these myngled and tempred togeather, make an electuarie, of the whiche let her take both in the mornyng and euenyng, at eche tyme a spoonefull.

Item, take two drams of Crystall beaten in to fyne powder, and deuide that in foure equall partes: one of these partes geue vnto the Nurse, the space of foure dayes to drynke, with broth made eyther of Cicer, or elles of peason.

Also all these thynges folowynge encrease and augment Mylke in the brestes: Annis and Annis seede, Wyll and the seede, Horehounde, Cardamomum, frethe Cheese, wortes made of olde Cheese, Cicer, Cristall beate to powdred, taken with Hony, Lettuse, fenel, wyne in which Rosemary or Sauery be sodden.

Item, to abstayne from venery or mans company: for yf the blye that, it shall spende and consume the mylke, and make it vnsatery and vnholsome, neyther can the chyld well brooke it, but mooste commonly shal caste it by agayne, because it can not digest it.

Also it shalbe beste that the chyld sucke not of the Mothers breste by and by, as soone as it is bozne, but rather of some other womans, for a day or two, for because that the cream (as they call it) straght after the byrth, the first day

in al women doth thicken and congeale.

Item, yf it chaunce that the Nurse be ouer  
soze lashed, or that she be ouer bounde, so that  
she take anye medicines to remedie it : then let  
another geue the chyld sucke whylest she be  
recovered agayne. And when the chyld is layde  
in cradell to be rocked, rocke not to faste, leaste  
throughe ouermuche rockyng and styrryng, the  
chyldes stomacke turne, and the Mylke there  
corrupt for lacke of rest.

Auisen aduiseyth to geue the chyld sucke two  
yeres : howbeit amonge vs mooste common-  
ly, they sucke but oue yere. And when ye wyll  
weane them, then do it not sodenly, but a lytle  
and a lytle, and to make for it lytle pylls of  
breaue and Suger to eate, and accustome it so,  
tyl it be able to eate all maner of meate : and  
this shal suffice for the education and bynging  
vp of infantess at this tyme. Notwithstandyng  
dyuers other thynges here are left vnspoken of,  
another tyme God wylling we shal declare them  
at large.

Howe long the  
chylde shoulde  
sucke.

Of diuers diseases and infirmities whiche  
chaunce to chyldren lately borne, and the  
remedis therfore. Cap. iiii.



Although there be in ma-  
ner infinite diseases which  
happen to Infantess, as  
wyrteth Hipocrates, Galenus,

Many diseases  
of Infantess.

¶ ii

Rasis,

## The thyꝛde booke.

Racis, Auicenna, and diuers other : yet for breuitie and shortnesse we wyl rehearse here onely suche of them whiche moste commonly happen to the same, & that be these : exulceration of the gummes, fluxe of the belly, or ouernuch loosenes of the same, the belly harde bounde, the cranepe, the cough, and distillation of the head, short wyndynes, bladders on the tongue, exulceration or clypping of the mouth, apostume in the eares, apostume in the brayne, swelling and bolnyng of the eyes, scumme or creame of the eyes, the feuer, gnawynge in the bellye, the body swelling and puffed vp, often sneesing, wheales or bladders of the body, swelling of the coddies, swelling of the nauyl, vnslapinesse, yering, appetite to parbreake, fearefulnesse in the dreames, the mother, issuing out of the fundament gutte, wormes in the bellye, chaufyng, the falling sicknesse, the consumption, the passye, trembling of the partes of the body, the stone, goggle eyes.

How

**C** Howe to cure and to remedie all these, now we  
wyl I shewe in order.

**F**irſt in erulceration of the gummes, are Of erulceration  
of the gums.  
wont certayne puſhes, and as it were whea-  
les to growe on the gummes, or in the cor-  
ners of the iawes, the whiche put the place to  
muche greeuance: and to remedie this, it shalbe  
good that ye with your synger rubbe the infan-  
tes gummes, and the puſhes or whelkes withal,  
and then to annoynt the same gummes with  
oyntment made of Hennes grece, Hares or Co-  
nyes brayne, oyle of Camomel mixt with hony:  
then take water, and in it seethe Camomell and  
Dyl, the whiche water beyng hotte, powre it  
on the chyldes head, holding it a foote aboue the  
head.

Of the flire and ouermuch loosenes  
of the bellye.

**F**or this take the seede of Roses, Cōmin, Ani-  
se, & the seede of Smallage, beate all these  
togeather, and make them plaster wyse, and  
lay it to the chyldes belly. For the flir in  
chyldren.

And farther, yf that it which the Infant boy-  
deth be of redde or yelow colour, then geue it  
to drynke of the syrope of Roses, or of Crabbes,  
other els of Pomegranates, tempred with a li-  
tle Mynte water.

Item, take the seede of Sozell, and beate it,  
then temper it togeather with the yolke of a  
rosted

### The thirde booke.

rosted egge, and geue that to the chyld to eate, or els take of the same seede bruised fynt, and then seeth it in fayre runnyng water, thereof let the chyld drynke two or thre tymes the day.

Item, take a gal, and beate it to powder, then seethe it in water, with this water temper Barlye meale, or the meale of Mellum, and make a plaster of it, the whiche laye vnto the chyldes bellye.

Item, yf that that commeth from the chyld be whytyshe, then take of Nutmeges the weyght of a peny, and of whyte frankencense a scruple, or the wayght of two pence, the whiche temper with the iuyce of a Quince, & geue it to the chyld to drynke.

Item, take the meale of Barlye, temper it with the iuyce of Plantane, and a lyttle Wineger, and make it plaster wyse, and lay it to the chyldes belly, but beyng fyrste a lyttle boyled together ouer the fyre.

Item, take the iuyce of Centinodium, and the whyte of an egge, & temper them together, to the whiche adde the powder of dyed red Roses, the powder of Hematites, Masticke, frankencense, Bole Armentake, Sanguis Draconis, & the ryues of Pomegranate, of all these mixed together make a plaster, and lay it (fynt warmed ouer the fyre) to the Infantes belly.

Item, to washe the chyld with the water in the whiche be sodden leaues of redde Roses, is very good.

Item, take the iuyce of Camfely, and the iuyce  
of

of Plantane the more and the lesse, and in this put clay of an olde furnace or ouen, and make of it a plaster, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

To vnloose the chyld beynge bounde.

If the chyld be so bounde, that it can not long tyme haue any stoole, then make a suppositary of Hony, lodden tyl it be harde and masse, and let the suppositarye be of the length of your litle fynger, and the bygnesse of two wheate straws bounde togeather, then dip it into oyle, & conuey it into the chyldes fundement.

Item, lyke wyse you may make a suppositar of the stalke and the roote of Beetes, or els of the roote called Orelle, or flouredeluce roote, made of the quantitie before spoken, and conueyed into the sitting place of the chyld.

Item, to geue to the infant as muche Honie as a pease to drynke, and to rubbe the belly a lytle, and to supple it with a peece of wooll dypped in oyle, or dypped in Bulles gall, and layd to the Navel.

Item, you may geue vnto the Nurse a medicine which hath vertue to vnbynde and loose, and the next day after let the chylde sucke her, and it wyl loose also the chyld.

Item, take of final Malloves, of great Malloves, of eche an handfull, of fenegreke & Rine-seede of eche an ounce, of Holyoke two ounces, & figges the number of .x. see the al these together in water, and then stampe them in a mortar, and



## The thirde booke.

put vnto it of Butter, and of Hennes grece, of  
eche two ounces, and of Saffron one scruple,  
and make a plaster of it vpon a linnen cloth, of  
the thichnesse of a straw, and lay it to the chyldes  
belly, a day and a nyght.

If this moue not the belly, then take of Aloes  
Cicotrine one dram, of Helebores both niger &  
albus, of eche .xv. graynes, beate these to powder,  
then temper them with three spoonefulls of the  
iuyce of Malwurt, or of Ore gall, in this licour  
dippe wooll, and lay it to the Pael the breadth  
of a hande, and bynde it to the place.

Item, take the iuyce of Malwurt, and of Mill  
meale, and see the those together tyll they be  
thicke, then make a plaster thereof, and lay it to  
the belly beneath the Pael.

### Remedie for the crampe, or disention of members

If it chaunce that the infant be taken with the  
disease called the crampe, the whiche for the  
most part commeth of indigestion, and of the  
weakenesse of the power attractiue, and special-  
ly in suche chyldren the whiche be verie fat and  
moyste, then shal ye annoynt al along the backe  
of the infante with the oyle of blew flowerde-  
lice or els white Lillies, eyther the oyle of Rue.

If the crampe take the chyld whileste it stree-  
cheth forth the armes, legges, and other mem-  
bers (as we be wont in gapping or yaning) then let

The thirde booke. Fol.Cbi.

let it be bathed and washed in water, in the whiche prime Roses, Couslopes, or the flowres of Camomell be sodden, or els annoynt it with the oyle of Violettes, and the oyle of Sweete Almons tempered together: and if the chyld be in great heate, annoynt hym with the oyle of Violettes, or with oyle Olyue, tempered with a litle whyte ware, and also powre on the chyldes head the oyle of violettes.

¶ Remdie for the cough and distillation, or Catarrhes of the head.

**S**ometymes the chyld is sore encombyred with the coughe, and with distillation or runnyng of humours out of the head, to the nose, the mouth, & the brest, the which ye shal remedy thus.

First powre warme water on the chyldes head, holdyng it a foote and a halfe from the chyldes head, and so do continually the space of halfe an houre, and in the meane whyle put a litle Honye on the chyldes tongue to chaue bypon: then put youre synger into the chyldes mouth, and depresse or holde downe the innermost part, or the roote of the tongue nexte to the throte, to prouoke the chyld to vomite, and to boyde the grosse and viscoure humours which be cause of this yll.

Item, take Gumme Arabiche, Gumme Dragagant, the seede of Quinces, the wyce of Lycorise, and Sugar penedunn, all this beaten together

## The chyldre booke.

gether, geue euery day to the chyldre a quantitie with Mylke newe mylked.

Item, make Almonde mylke with Almondes blanchēd, and only the iuyce or water of fenell, whereof when it is well sodden, let the chyldre eate or drynke morning and euenyng, or anye other tyme of the day.

And yf it be so that the chough haue crasped and made rough the tongue and the roose of the mouth, then take of the seede of Quinces two spoonefulls, bruisē them a litle, and steepe them in warme water the space of two or thre houres, then strayne the viscoure & grosse water from them through a strainer, and that remayneth, frye it togeather in a fryyng panne with Suger Penidum, & the oyle of sweete Almondes, thereof making an electuarium, the whiche geue vnto the chyldre to receyue: yf the chyldre haue great heate with the cough, then ad vnto the same electuarie, the iuyce of a sweete Pomegranate.

Item, agaynst the cough and ouermuche heate, take the seede of whyte Popie and Dragagant, of eche two drams, of the seede of Cowardes foure drams, and beate all these togeather, and geue at once the wayght of foure pence to the chyldre, with the water in whiche reasons haue ben sodden.

Item, take reasons, and dooyng away the graynes of them, seeth them togeather with water in a fryyng pan, so that they burne not to the bottome of the pan, then take it from the fyre,  
and

and beate it well in a morter, temperyng there  
withall Sugar Penidium, and geue of this in  
the mornyng and etienyng to the chyld.

Agayne, yf the cough come of a colde cause,  
then take a litle Myrthe beaten to powder, and  
temper it with a quantitie of warmed Honye,  
and the oyle of sweete Almondes, and of this  
geue vnto the chyld.

Furthermore, the Nurse must auoide al such  
thynges the which may engender cough, as wi-  
neger, ouermuche salted meates, Cheese, Nuts,  
& all sharpe thynges. Also she must annoynt the  
chyldes brest with butter, and with Dialthea.

Item, for the cough, take Reasens, and frye  
them in a fryng panne, then stampe them in a  
morter, and to that adde as muche of Sugar  
Penidium, with a lytle oyle of violetttes, & make  
an electuarie of these, and geue to the chyld the  
mountenaunce of a haseil Nut.

Remedy for short wynde.

**M**Any tymes chaunceth also to Infantes  
difficultie of breathing or short windynesse,  
the which to remedie, take Lineseede, and  
beate it, & geue of it vnto the chyld with Hony:  
but if the disease encrease on the chyld, and that  
the wynde pypes in maner seme stopped, then  
annoynt well the eares, and all the places about  
the eares with oyle Olyue, and also the tongue,  
for to prouoke bonite; and then powre a li-  
tle warme water into the chyldes mouth to  
washe it withal, and geue to it a litle Lineseede,  
tempered with Honye and beaten, made after  
the

## The chyldre booke.

the fashion of an electuarie.

Item, yf the chyldre haue besydes this also the  
sire: then geue vnto it the Syrope of Mytels,  
other els Dates sodden with Mylke and flowre.

Agaynst wheales or bladders on the tongue.

Item, sometymes happeneth to the  
chyldren, wheales and blisters on theyr  
tongue and mouth, whiche thynges  
conimeth of the sharpenesse and eager-  
nesse of the Narses mylke, the mouth  
and tongue of the Infant beyng so ten-  
der, that the least thyng that toucheth  
it shal offend it: wherfore, besydes that  
it is great payne to the chyldre thus to be  
blistered by the eagernes of the milke, it  
is also very perillous and dangerous.  
For suche wheales which be not ripe &  
seeme blacke, betoken death: whiche yf  
they be whyte or yelowyshe, then they  
be of lesse peryl.

Agaynst this yll, take violettes and Roses,  
and seethe them in a litle Rose water, and there-  
with walthe the blysters.

Item, take the iuyce of Lettuse, the iuyce of  
Petie

Pettie mozel, and the iuyce of Burſelayne, which when they be well commixt and tempered toge- ther, annoynt therewith the whelkes. And yf the foresayde blysters oz whelkes be blackiſhe : then adde to the foresayde iuyces, Licorise beaten to powder.

Item, if the same be very moyste, then take Myꝛre, Galles, the rine of Frankencense, beate them wel together, and temper them with Honey, and annoynt the chyldes tongue there- with.

Item, take the iuyce of Mulberies before they be fully ripe, other els of bnyꝛpe grapes, whiche is called Mergens, and with that annoynt the tongue.

Item, it is verrey good to washe the tongue with redde wine, and then to strewe vpon it the powder of Galles, oz els of the barke oz rine of Frankencense.

Yf yowill haue a quicker medicine in opera- tion and sharper : then take Bole armemake, Sidiũ, and Sunnach, of ec he thre drams : al- so of Galles two drams, of Aloẽ one dram, all these beate together, and searſe then through a searſer, and strewe that powder on the blysters.

Item, yf these wheales be reddiſhe and cauſe muche spittle to gather together in that place, then let the Nurse vse ſuche thynges whiche are moyste and colde, and let her chaue in her mouth very small a fewe satches, of the whiche lay on the Infantes mouth and tongue.

Item, Annũm oz starch tempered together with  
Rose

## The thyrd booke.

Rose water, a put on the chyldes tongue, is good.  
Item, take the iuyce of Pomegranates, the  
iuyce of Quinces, or the iuyce of Dinges, and  
do of this on the chyldes tongue in lyke maner;  
but yf the wheales or blysters be somewhat pe-  
lowyshe, then to these iuyces spoken of before,  
adde the iuyce of Lettuse and of Purselane.  
But if the wheales seme whytish, then take of  
Myrre and of Saffron, of eche one dramme, of  
Sugar candye two drams, and beate these to  
pouder, and lay of it on the wheales and tongue.

**Of exulceration or clefture, chapping, or  
chynnyng of the mouth.**

**S**ometymes by reason of the hardnes of  
the Nurses pappes, the chyldes lyppes and  
mouth be exulcerate; hauing in maner of  
cleftes & chynes in them: and in this case take  
tozed woll, & dyppe it in the iuyce of Plantane,  
or els in Butter molten, or in fresh Hens greace,  
euery of them being warme, and with this an-  
oynt the mouth and lyppes of the chyld.

**Of appostumatation and running of the eares.**

**V**HEN that humoures and matter  
flureth out of the eares, whiche pro-  
perlye commeth of aboundant hu-  
mours in all the bodye; and mooste  
specially in the head: then take a  
peece of woll, and dyppe it in Hony myrt with  
redde wyne; to the whiche is put also a litle  
quantitie



quantitie of Alome beate to powder, oz of Saf-  
fron, then make of the same as it were a tence,  
and put it in the chyldes eare, and when the tent  
hath sucked and drawen to it the humours and  
fylthynesse of the eare, then take it out, and put  
in newe: and yf that which commeth out of the  
eare be as matter, then take of sodden Hony,  
& temper it with water, put of it into the eares:  
or els take the powder of Galles, temperyng it  
with vineger, and do lyke wyse.

But yf the chyld haue great payne and do-  
lour by wyndynesse, ventositie, and the humours  
in this place, then see the Organy and Myrthe  
with oyle Myue, and sobeyng warme, put of it  
into the eares.

Of apostumation in the head.



If there be any apostume engen-  
dered in the head, (which many  
tymes chaunceth) the which cau-  
seth the chekes & eyes to be great-  
ly payned, & the eye sight to waxe  
wainy the or tarwaxe: then must  
be applyed suche thynges which may refrigerate  
& coole the haynes: as, take of the iuyce of Go-  
wardes, the iuyce of Nychthade, and iuyce of  
Purselande, and temper them with the oyle of  
Roses, in this dryppe a peece of wooll, and lay it  
to the head, and as often as it waxeth drye, dip it  
agayne.

Of

## The thirde booke.

### Of the swelling or bolnyng of the eyes.

**A**gainst swelling and bolnyng of the eyes, take Licium, and temper it with womans Mylke, & put of it into the chyldes eyes, and bynde it to the place with a fyne and soft linnen cloth, then afterwarde washe the eyes with water in which Camomel and Basil haue ben sodden. If that in this swelling the eyes be not red, neyther the browes swollen: then take Myrre, Aloes, Saffron, and the leaues of Roses. and temper al these, and steepe them in olde wine, and binde it to the chyldes eyes with some linnen cloth, and into the chyldes nose put a quantitie of Ambre dissolued in womans Mylke.

### Of the scum or whyte of the eye.

**A**gainst the scum or whyte of the eye, which for the moste parte happeneth to chyldren through ouer muche cryng and weeping, take the iuyce of Solatrum, and drop of the same into the chyldes eye, and if by the same chaunce the hayne of the eyes waxe reddishe, or be swollen, then annoynt them with the same iuyce.

### Against immoderate heate, or the feuer.

**I**f the Infant be in great and behement heate, contrary to nature, the whiche is called a feuer: first it shalbe the Nurtles part, to eate & be such thynges the which coole and moisten.

Also

Also to geue vnto the Infant of these thynges folowynge. The iuyce of Pomegranate, the water of Bourdes, Sugar, with a lytle Camphere mixed therewithall, tempered well togeather. Item, it is very good to prouoke it to sweating.

Item, take of the iuyce of Wormewood, of Plantaine, Malowes, and Singrene, and temper them altogether, and seeth them a lytle on the fyre, in the whiche also mixe Barly meale, and make a plaster of all these, and lay it to the chyldes brest. Also take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Poplar, and myxe them together, with this oymntment being colde, annoynt the chyldes forehead, the temples, the armes, the handes about the wrestles, and the pulses, and the feete about the ancles.

Item, take of Barly meale, and of dried Roses and poudred, and temper these with the water of Roses, and the water of Endiue, and make thereof on the fyre a plaster, the which lay to the chyldes brest somewhat warme.

Also as often as the chyld is washed, let it be done with water in whiche is sodden suche thynges whiche coole: As Letice, Purslayne, Endiue, Plantayne, and such other.

Agaynst frettyng or knawynge in the belly.

**I**f the chyld be bered with frettyng and knawynge in the belly, the whiche thyng ye shall knowe by the immoderate cryng of the chyld, and that it turneth from one syde to another with great cryng: then shall you take  
R. i. warme

### The thirde booke.

warne water, wherin hath ben sodden Lauander, Cummin, Fenell seede, or the seede of Dyll, and oyle Dlyse, tempering them together: and herein dyp a peece of wooll, and therewith soke the chyldes belly oftentynes.

¶ Agaynst swelling of the body.

**W**hen the chyldes body or any part therof is swollen and puffed by: then take the toppes of Elder tree, and of Malworthe, and seeth them in white wine, and therein lay the Infant, specially if it be not taken with ouer great heate: but yf so be that with swelling in the head the belly be swollen also, then take Myrre, Aloes epatike, and Saffron, and beate them altogether, & temper them with the iuyce of Beanes, and lay it to the chyldes head.

¶ Agaynst often sneesynge.

**S**ometimes the Infantes be sore troubled and vexed with often sternutation and sneesynge, whiche thyng yf it come of the Apostume in the head: then shall ye minister suche thynges to the head which refrigerate and coole, whether it be oyles, oynmentes, iuyces of the hearbes, or other thynges. If this come of any other cause then of Apostume: then take Basyll, be it greene or dry, and put of the iuyce or powder of it into the chyldes nose. But yf this sneesynge come and begin with heate, and that the chyldes eyes seeme as they grewe inwarde for payne thereof: then lay to the chyldes head the  
leaves

leaves of pū claine, oꝛ So warde, cut in thinne  
slices and tempered with the oyle of Roses and  
Barlye meale, and also the yolke of an egge.

**C** Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.

**T**hese whelkes pf they appeare blacke vpon  
the body, they signifie peryll of lyfe, and so  
much the moze, the greater quantitie that  
there is of them: but pf they seeme whytyshe oꝛ  
reddyshe, it is no peryll, and may easily be cured.  
wherefoze take the leaues of the red Rose, the  
leaues of Myrtills, and of Tamariscus, and seeth  
these in water, and in that water wet a linnen  
cloth, and soke there with the whelkes.

Item, w̄tewyle it is good to annoynt the  
same with the oyle of Roses, of Myrtylles, and  
Tamariscus. If the whelkes be whyte oꝛ reddish,  
then let them be rype befo:e ye minister any  
thyng to them: and when they be open and be-  
gyn to matter, then to cleanse, purifie, and to  
dry them, beyng rype and broken. It is very  
good to walbe the same whelkes with Sulsum  
oꝛ Hydromell, in whiche Salt peter is dissolued.  
Sulsum and Hydromell is, water and honye  
sodden together.

**C** Agaynst swelling of the Coddies.

**M**any tymes chaunceth to chylidren (tho-  
rowe ouermuch crying) swelling about  
the Coddies, and sometymes burstenesse,

## The thirde booke.

and swelling in the inner part of the thyghes, the whiche swelling sometymes commeth by inflammation or great heate, and sometymes with onely wyndynesse. If it come of wyndynesse, then the coddess wyll sometymes appeare so styffe as a tabour, and shyne as it were an horne. The remedie for this is, to take a quart of double beare woort, and therein seeth of the leaues of Bay halfe a handfull, of Rue a quarter of an handfull, of fenell, Wyll, and Camomell, of eche a meane handfull, cut and bruse all these hearbes together, and seeth them from the quart to the pinte, then strayne them strongly from the liquer, in the whiche liquer seeth so much Beanesflowre as may serue to make a plaster, thereto addyng at the latter ende two or three spoonefulls of oyle of Camomell, and lay this plaster hotte to the coddess. If the swelling come of heate, then alay the same with some colde hearbes, suche as I haue oftentimes spoken of before.

### Agaynst swelling of the Hauell.

**A**lso sometymes the chyldes Hauell swelleth, and specially strayght after the byrth when it is cut. For this, take Sypphe celstike, and seeth it in the oyle of Almondes myxed with a lytle Turpentine, then in this dyp wool, and lay it on the place.

But yf so be that this swelling come of ouermuch cryng, cough, or of a stroke or fall: Then take bytter Lupines, and the powder of sayre

laye olde linnen cloth burnt to powder, & temper these with red wine, and then in this dyp a peece of towe, and lay it to the Hauell.

### Agaynst bnsleepynesse.

**A**gaynst bnsleepynesse, that is, when the chylde is destitute & wanteth his due & naturall rest, all the while crying and weeping. For this take two heades (with the seedes therein conteyned) of whyte Popie, and with one sponesfull of Rose water, and three or foure droppes of vineger, stampe them in a mortar reasonably, then adde thereto two sponesfulls of womans mylke, and the waight of an halfe penny of Saffron, with halfe a sponesfull of Barbie Rowre, the which yet stampe a lytle together agayne, and then lay it in a fyne thynne double linnen cloth, and apply it to the forehead from one temple to the other.

Item, geue the chylde to drynke a lytle of the syrope of Popie. Also to annoynt the temples with the oyle of Popie is very good.

But yf this bnsleepynesse come of the impuritie of the Nurtes mylke (as many tymes it doth) then take of the oyle of violetes, and put vnto it a lytle quantitie of vineger, and of this licour drop oftentimes into the chyldes nolethylles. Or els take the oyle of Roses, & temper it with the iuyce of Lettuse, and therewith annoynt the head and the stomacke of the chylde, & farther, see that the Nurtes mylke may be amended.



## The thirde booke.

### ¶ Agaynst xerung or the hychat.

**T**his xerung commeth eyther of coldnesse of the stomache, other els of ouermuche fulnesse, or for lacke of meate & emptines of the stomache, or els by some hot and colerike qualitie bytryng vpon the mouth of the stomache.

As often as it commeth by the abundaunce of meate and fulnesse, the remedie is to prouoke it to vomite. If by coldnesse of the stomache, then annoynt the stomache with the oyle of Bayes warmed, other els lay to the stomache a plaster made of the seede of Dyll, beaten and tempered with the iurce of Hyntes.

But yf it chaunce by any heate or colerike qualitie, then take the oyle of violettes, or of Roses, the iurce of Endiue, or of any other suche hearbes, the whiche haue power to infrigidate and coole, and temper the same with womans mylke, and annoynt therewith the chyldes stomache.

And when it proceedeth by defect and lacke of meate or emptines of the stomache, then geue to the chyld to feede vppon mylke, and other good holsome thynges to suppe, nether passe not greatly though the chyld reiecte and vomite by agayne that the whiche it receyueth, for so muche euer wyll remayne in the stomache that shalbe sufficient to sustayne it, and meanely to nouryshe it.

Agaynst

Agaynst often parbreakeing by weakenesse and  
feeblesse of the Stomacke.



Agaynst ouermuche parbreakeing,  
beate foure graynes of Cloues, and  
geue it to the chylde to drinke, with  
foure or fiue sponesfuls of red wine.

Item, take of Mastike, whyte  
frankensence, and the leaues of the redde Rose,  
so much as shalbe sufficient, and all these beaten  
together, temper them with the iuyce of Myn-  
tes, & make a plaster of it, laying it to the chyldes  
stomacke. But yf the chyldes vompyng be very  
behemment, then put vnto these foresayd thynges  
a quantitie of Rose vineger.

Item, take fine meale, and bake it so hotte in  
an Ouen, or els in a fryng panne ouer the fyre,  
till it waxe browne, then beate it to powder  
agayne, putting it into wineger, and to these ad-  
the yolke of an egge hard rosted, Mastike, fran-  
kensence, and Gumme Arabike, and temper all  
these with the iuyce of Myntes, making of it a  
plaster, the whiche lay to the chyldes stomacke,  
and to the chyldes mouth & nose holde a warme  
tosse of bread.

Causes of this yll be three. The fyrst, yf the  
chylde haue taken more mylke then it is able to  
concorde and digest. The seconde, yf the Nur-  
ses mylke be ouerthynne, watery, and fluyde.  
The thyrde, yf the same mylke be impure, se-  
culent, and corrupt. These causes prouoke vo-  
mite, and specially yf the chylde also haue a

## The thirde booke.

weake and waterish stomache: wherfore ye must helpe the Infant after this maner.

first let the chylde sucke lesse then it did before, and then also marke that which the chylde doth perbrake, whether it sauer sharpely lyke wineger, and that it be whytyshe: for if it be so, then take of whyte frankensence. .iiii. graynes, of dyed Rue. .xx. graynes: beate these to powder, and geue it to the chylde to drynke with the syrope of red Roses.

Oz els let the Nurse chaue Cummin, and so put it into the chyldes mouth: Geue also of the syrope of Pomegranates, with the powder of dry Myntes to the chylde.

Take Masticke, Accatia, Xilooloes, Galles, whyte frankensence, tosted Bread, of eche lyke muche, beate them togeather, puttyng to of red Roses, and temperyng it with the conferue of Roses, and lay it to the chyldes stomache.

But if it so be that the perbraking of the chylde sauer not after the salypion of wineger, but after some other sowre sauour, and that it be not whytyshe, but pale or yelowyshe: then geue it the iuyce of Quinces, & lay this plasier vnto the chyldes stomache. Take Barly meale, wyld Mulberies, and Psidium, beate all these together, and temper it with Rose water, and lay it to the chyldes stomache.

And furthermore, yf the chyldes stomache be some what wateryshe, and slowe in digestion, then annoynt it with the water of Roses, in the which Muske hath been dissolued, or els the water

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxiii.

water of Mirtylles, and geue it to drynke the  
syce of Quinces, with a lytle Cloues and Su-  
gger, or with a scruple of Nutmegges therewith  
tempered and myxed.

Agaynst fearefull and terrible dreames.

**A**lso sometimes the chyldren be haxed and  
biquieted with fearefull and terrible drea-  
mes in their sleepe, whiche thyng for the  
moost part commeth of the abundaunce of fooode,  
and ouermuch meate or drynkes, whiche for the  
copie and superfluitie thereof, can not be conuict  
ne ouercome of nature, wherefoze necessarily it  
putrifieth and corrupteth: the noysome and hy-  
dious vapours whereof, flying vp to the head in  
time of sleepe, cause these terrible fantasies in the  
sleepe. And thus it may be remedied. first take  
heede that ye lay not the chylde to sleepe straght  
after it hath fed, and also let it lyche a litle thonie,  
swallowing it downe, so that by it, such thinges  
the which be somewhat harde to digest and con-  
coct, may the soner be digested, and the refuse the  
more easly to descende into the guttes.

Item, euery day geue to the Infant halfe a  
dram of the electuarie called Diamuscum, or Di-  
aplicis. Also Triacle in this case is very good, ta-  
ken with mylke, as sayth Rasis.

Agaynst issuing forth of the Fundament gutte.

**F**or the issuing forth of this gutte, when  
the chyldre laboureth to ease it selfe: Take  
Mirtylles, Acome cuppes, red Roses dried,  
burnt

## The thirde booke.

burnt Hartes home, burnt Alome, Goates  
hoofe, Balauilion, and Galles, of ech lyke much,  
and seeth all these together with water, so long  
tyll the water haue receyued the strength of the  
ingredience, and with this water being warme,  
washe the gut, and so conuey it into the body a-  
gayne, as I taught you in the seconde booke.

Agaynst Tenasmus.



Tenasmus is a disease when the  
child enforceth it selfe to the stoole,  
and yet can do nothing, the which  
thyng oftentimes chaunceth to  
chyl dren, most comunly proce-  
dyng of cold. Agaynst the which, ye shal vse these  
remedies. Take Garden Cresses and Cummin  
seede, of eche lyke muche, beate them togeather,  
and temper them with olde Butter, and geue it  
the chylde to drynke with colde water.

Item, take Turpentine, & lay it vpon coales,  
whose fume let the chylde receiue beneath in the  
fundement, the fume being inclosed rounde  
about with clothes.

Item, take Tarre, and lyke wyse make fume  
of it, receiuyng the fume as before.

Agaynst moomes in the belly.

Sometymes there breede moomes in the  
guttis, of the bygnesse and quantitie of such  
as are wonte to be in olde Cheese, called  
Pytes, and some lyke Lyce. And sometyne in  
the belly be engendred moomes of the bygnesse  
of

## The thirde booke. Fol. Cxv.

of earth wormes, called Cales. Agaynst these  
ble this remedie. Take the water of Cestum-  
nodia, and geue it to the chyld to drynke with  
mylke.

Item, take of whyte Corall, the scrapping of  
Iuory, of Hartes horne burnt, and of Treos, of  
eche a scruple, of Sugar Candie one ounce and  
an halfe, of the water of Cestumnodia, so much  
as shalbe sufficient to temper all these thynges  
before, and of this make suppositaries, mini-  
string to the chyld every day the waight of two  
drammes.

Other wyle accordyng to Rasis mynde. Take  
of Commyn seede as muche as shalbe sufficient,  
and temper it with Ore gall, making thereof a  
plaster, the whiche ye shall lay to the Infantes  
Pauell.

Item, oyle Olive taken and drunken a small  
quantitie thereof, is very good to kyll all maner  
of wormes which breede in the gutte, neere to  
the fundement. Take the fynest Cotton, & therof  
make suppositaries, the which ye shall annoynt  
with the oyle of wormewood, or of Rue, or of  
the hymelles of Peaches, or the oyle of bytter  
Almondes, and so to conuey it into the chyldes  
syttyng place.

Item, it shall greatly profite the chyld, yf it  
be washed in the water in whiche is sodden  
wormewood, and the leaues of Peaches.

Item, an oyntment for the same. Take of  
wormewood, & of Lupines, of ech two drams, of  
Siler

## The thirde booke.

Siler montanum, Commin, Cockle, Centorie, and Centonicum, and of Hartes hony burnt, of eche foure drammes, al these thynges beaten together, temper them in the oyle of woorne wood, or of bytter Almons, the waight of two ounces, putting to it foure drammes waight of ware, and make hereof an opintment, and annoynt the chyldes belly therewith by the fyre, or in some warme place.

Item, take of Cockle two drammes, of woorne wood and Mastiche, of eche one dram, of Aloes, red Corall, of eche two drammes, of Coriander preparat, sixe drammes, beate all these well together. Adde also to these, of Rie meale three ounces, of Lupines beaten to powder, sixe drams, of Saffron two drammes, temper all these in two ounces of the iuyce of Rue, and foure ounces of the iuyce of woorne wood, or of the oyle of the same, and make hereof a plaster, and lay it vnto the chyldes Hauell the breadth of a hand.

Item, geue the chyld the waight of foure pence of the powder of Aloes cicorine, with layre water fynt sodden & sweeted with Sugar, or els with single beare, and this no doubt is soueraigne.

Item, agaynst the great and long woomes. Take of the iuyce of woorne wood, and of Dre gall, of both two ounces, of Colocynthis, viiss. drammes, temper all these well together, ad- dyng to it a lytle wheaten meale, & make here- of a plaster, the whiche lay to the Hauell of the chyld.

Item,



## The thirde booke. Fol. Cxvi.

¶ Item a bath for the same.

Take Worme wood and Gaules, & seeth them in water, and let the chyld be bathed in it vp to the Hauell.

¶ Of chaufyng or gallyng in any place of the body.

**A**gainst gallyng or chaufyng of the chyldes skin, by reason of the acrimonie & sharpnes of brine or sweat: Take Mirtills and beate them to powder, and strewe thereof on the place. Item, take of Trios, of the red Rose, of Ciparis, of Tragacantum, so much as shalbe thought sufficient, and beate them all, or part of them, & strewe of the powder on the chaufed place.

Item, take of the oyle of Roses one ounce, of whyte frankencense ore dramme, and melt these togeather, and then take .iij.ii. graynes of Camphere dissolved in Rose water, and myxe therewithal, and of all this make an oyntment, and annoynt the chaufed place therewithall. Also Vnguentum album, & Vnguentum rubrum be good for this purpose.

Item, the decoction and fomentation with the water wherein Plantaine, Knotgrass, Doche rootes, or Bursa pastoris is sodden, is very good for the same.

¶ Of the falling sicknesse.

**S**ometymes these Infantes be bered and encombred with the falling sicknesse, and that two maner of wayes. One is, that it

103. The thirde booke.

it hath this disease brought forth with the  
byrth & cause of the which, is colde and yll hu-  
mours in the head and braynes. Another is, that  
it taketh this infirmitie after the byrth by some  
accidentall causes, in which case, yf it leaue not  
the chyld, being a man chyld, before he be xxv.  
yeeres of age, and the woman chyld, about the  
tyme of hauryng her fyrt flowres, if it forsake  
them not in this space, neyther by the myght of  
Nature, neyther of Medicines, then is it lykely  
never to depart from them.

Agayne, yf this disease come not by Nature,  
but by some accidentall cause afterwarde: then  
geue diligent herde that the Nurles mylke be  
very good, & conuenient to the chyldes Nature.  
And for the same purpose, yf necessity require,  
it shalbe very good to purge and cleanse the Nur-  
les body with due and meete medicines, and she  
must auoyde all such thynges the which doo coole  
and moysten: and to suffer the chyld to receyue  
no more mylke at once, then it may be able well  
to digest.

Agaynst this cruell disease, aucthours muche  
commende the roote of a pionie, onely hanged  
about the chyldes necke.

A fewe the same roote dyed & beaten to pow-  
der, and so oftentymes geuen, to the chyld, to  
take, sometymes with dynke, sometymes with  
posage, pap, or mylke, or any other wayes. Like-  
wyle the seeds of pionie is very good.

And furthermo:e powre nowe and then into the  
chyldes nosheth, yf of oyle of Castoreum, or the  
oyle

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxviij.

oyle of Costus, or of Euforbium: Also let the chyld smell to Rue and to Asa fetida.

Item, to hange Viscum querquinum, whiche is gathered in Marche the Doone decayng, about the chyldes necke, is very good. Diuers other thynges there be whiche myght be here rehearsed, but this shalbe sufficient at this tyme.

Consumption or pynning away of the body.

**W**hen the Infant falleth away, and the flesh rebateth, remayning nothing but as it were skyn and bone, and thereby the chyld wareth sickely: Then let the Infant be often bathed in water, in whiche hath been sodden the head and the feete of a weathery, so long tyll the fleshe part from the bowes of his owne accorde: and every tyme that the chyld commeth forth of the bath, fyrr let it be wyped and dyled cleane, and then annoynt it with this oyntment. Take fresh Butter, oyle of violettes, and oyle of Roses, of eche one ounce, of the fatte of freshe porke halfe an ounce, of whyte ware two drammes: melt all these thynges together, and make an oyntment of it, annoynting therewith the chyldes body.

Item, take whyte Ware, Swines gresse, Sheepes tallowe, freshe Butter: melt all these thynges together, and strayne them, making of it an oyntment, and annoynt the chyld withall once or twyse every day. But the chiefe hope  
of

## The thirde booke.

of restoration, must be in light, restorative, and pure nourishing meates.

¶ Of lassitude, wearinesse, or heavinesse  
of the chyldes body.

**S**ometymes it chaunceth, that the chyldes members of the body be so feeble, as though it had the paulsey, so that with that partes of the body the chyld can not helpe it selfe, neyther can it lyfe by the handes, armes, ne stande on the feete. If the chyld haue this disease why- lest it sucketh, then let the Nurse be comforted and strengthened with such thynges the which haue vertue to heate and to dry. Also let the Nurse feede only on rolled or fryed meates, and that she forbear from mylke, fysh, and hard or sale powdred fleshe: for commonly this disease springeth of cold and moyst humours, beseeging the limmes.

Furthermore, let not the Nurse vse any wa- tered wyne, or myxed, but mere and in his owne kynd: and let her bath the chyld euer before she geue it sucke, after, annoynting it with the oyle of Castorium, or the oyle of Costum, and let the chyld drynke euery day a quantitie of this elec- tuarie folowynge.

Take garden Mynt, Cinamome, Cummin, dry Roses, Masticke, Fenugreke, Valeriane, Amios, Doronicum, Zedoarium, Cloues, Saun- ders, Xilaloos, of eche a dram, of Muske halfe a dram, beate al those to powder, and confict them with claryfied & depured honye, making thereof an

## The thirde booke. Pol. Crviii.

an electuarie, of the which euery day geue vnto the chylde the weyght of two pence to dysnye with white wine. If the chylde haue this diseale in euery part of the body, then take an ounce of Ware, and a dram of Euforbium, the which Euforbium ye shall beate in a morter with. v.oz. vi. droppes of Oyle, tyll it be perfectly beaten, then temper them together ouer the fire, adding ther vnto so much Oyle as may be sufficient to make a searcloth, and lay it to the raynes of the backe.

**O**f tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the Palsey.

**I**f the chylde happen to be bered with tremblyng or shakynge of the body, or the partes thereof, so that ye feare the Palsie of the same part, or that the falling sicknesse shoulde ensue: then remedy it after this meanes. Take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Spykenarde, & temper them together, warming it, and therewith annoynt the backe or reines, and the other shaking members: ye may also take any other oyle the which hath vertue to warme and calefie, as the oyle of Bayes, and such other.

Item, to bath the chylde in the decoction of Rosemary, Sage, Tyme, Hylope, Sauery, Alexander, Smallege. &c. is very soueraigne.

If you can not cure it by this meanes, then demaunde farther counsaile of the Physitians.

S. i.

Agaynst

## The thirde booke.

Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stop-  
pyng of the vrine.

**S**trangury, Dislury, and the difficultie in ma-  
shyng of water, oftentymes chaunceth to  
chyl dren by reason of the stone, or aboun-  
dauce of grauell, other els many times of some  
other viscosus, slimie, and flegmatike matter, in  
maner & foume of dyegs or ragges ouerwhar-  
ting and croslyng the passage, wherby the vrine  
shoulde passe forth, in such wyse, that (without  
great paine) the chylde can not make his water,  
and that yet but in small quantitie at once.

Whiche of these wayes so euer it come, it shal-  
be very good to bath the chylde by to the Nauell  
in the decoction of Peritone of the wall, Mal-  
lowes, Helyoke, Lyn seede, Lillie rootes, fene-  
greke, and Sauery, other els with a sponge or  
double linnen cloth dypped therein, escones to  
foment the share and neather part of the belly  
agaynst the bladder.

But in men chyl dren cheefely foment them  
on the straighes, betweene the fundement and  
the coddes, the whiche place in Latine is called  
Perineum, for there in them lieth the necke of the  
Bladder. After this bathyng or fomentation,  
dy the places fomented, and whylest they be yet  
red with bathyng, annoynt them with the oyle  
of Scorpions, to be had at the Apothecaries, or  
els the oyle called Petroleum.

And yf further neede shall require it, ye may  
apply

apply this plaster folowynge to the foresayde places. Take of Parseley, and of Alexander, of eche halfe an handfull, of Peritorie, Malloves, Hoolyche rootes, of eche an handfull, seeth these hearbes together in good stale ale, tyll such time as they be soft, then powre out the ale from them, and stampe the hearbes in a stone moyster, adding thereunto of the seedes of fenegreke and Line, of eche halfe an ounce, beyng fyrst beaten to subtyll powder.

Item, of Cummin seede the wayght of foure grotes, beaten lyke wyse to fyne powder, of the oyle of Scorpions, Petroleum, or other appertiffed oyle one ounce and an halfe, of all these wel commixed togeather, make a plaster, and lay to the places aforesayde. To speake of any medicines to be administred in wardes, it is but folly, for so muche as it is so harde to cause a chylde to take any thyng within foorth.

This difficultie in makynge water, may ensue by other meanes, wherof we neede not to speake at this tyme.

Of goggle eyes, or looking a squint.

If the chylde haue goggle eyes, or that it looke a squint, then fyrst sette the cradell in suche a place, that the lyght may come directly and ryght in the chylde's face, neyther in the one syde, neyther in the other, neyther aboue the head, lest it turne the syght after the lyght. Also marke on whiche syde that the eyes doo goggle, and let the lyght come vnto it on the

S. ii.

con.



### The thirde booke.

contrary syde, so to retorne the syght. And in the nyght season set a Candell on the contrary syde, so that by this meanes, the goglyng of the eyes may be returned to the ryght place. And further it shalbe good to hang clothes of dyuers and freshe colours on the contrary syde, and specially of the coloure of lyght greene, or yelow, for the chyld shall haue pleasure to behold these straunge colours. And in returnyng the eye syght towarde such thynges, it shalbe occasion to rectifie the syght agayne. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, of the diseases of chyldren after they be borne, making here an ende of this third booke, for this tyme.

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxx.

Of such thinges the which shalbe entreaten of in this fourth Booke.

Cap. i.

**H**ere in this fourth booke (by the leaue of God) shal briefly be declared suche thynges whiche may farther or hinder the conception of man, whiche as it may be by diuers meanes letted and hyndered, so also by many other wayes, it may be farthered and amended. Also to knowe by certayne signes and tokens, whether the woman be conceyued or no, & whether the conception be male or female, and finally certayne remedies and medicines to farther and helpe conception, and thereafter we wyll (accoording to our promise in the Prologue) set foorth certayne bellifying receiptes, & so make an ende of this whole treatise.

S. iij.

De

## The fourth booke.

Of conception, and how many wayes it may  
be hindred or letted. Chap. ii.

**H**ere is nothyng vnder heauen,  
which so manifest and playnely  
doth declare and shewe the mag-  
nificent myghtinesse of the om-  
nipotent lyving GOD, as doth  
the perpetuall and continuall  
generation and conception of lyving thynges  
here in earth, by the whiche is saued, prologed,  
and augmented the kynde of all thynges. And  
where that this almightie Lorde and creatoure  
hath so institute and ordayned, that no singular  
thing in it selfe (here vpon the earth) should con-  
tinually remayne and abyde: yet hath he geuen  
from the beginning, and instincted such a power  
& vertue vnto these mortall creatures, that they  
may engender & produce other like thynges vnto  
them selfe, and vnto their owne similitude, in  
the which alway is saued the seede of posteritie.  
were not this prouision had by almightie God,  
the nature and kynde of all maner of thynges  
woulde soone peryshe and come to an ende, the  
whiche vertue and power of generation many  
tymes doth halte and nisse, by defect and the  
contrary disposition in the partes generant:  
As ye may euidently see in the sowyng of Corne  
and all other maner of seede. So that there be  
in all maner of generation three principal parts  
concurrent to the same, the sower, the seede so-  
wen, and the receptacle or place receyving and  
contay-

## The fourth booke. Fol. Ccxi.

contaynyng the seede. If there be fault in any of these thre, then shall there neuer be due generation, vnto such tyme as the fault be removed, or amended.

The Earth vnto all Seedes, is as a Mother and Nurse, contaynyng chyping and embracing them in her wombe, feeding and fostering them as the Mother doth the chyld in her Belly or Matrix, vntyll suche tyme as they come vnto the growth, quantitie, and perfection due vnto theyr nature and kinde: But yf this seede conceived in the bowles of the earth, do not proue or fructifie, then be thou sure that eyther there is let in the sower, in the seede, or els in the earth.

The earth may be ouer waterishe, dankishe, or ouer hot and dry, or els full of stones, grauell, or other rubbysh, or full of yll weedes, whiche may strangle and choke the good corne in his growyng: also the seede may be putrified, or otherwyle viciate and corrupted, and so the lyfe and spirite of it banyshe away and destroyed. The sower may vnozdinately strewe and cast the seede on the earth, &c. So that yf there be lette in none of these partes concurrant to generation, or that the lettes be removed and doone awaye, then doubtlesse wyll ensue multiplicati on and encrease ment of that kynde, of the whiche the seede commeth, accordyng to the naturall enclination, the whiche almyghtie God hath enplanted and sette in the kynde of all thynges.

S. iiii.

How

## The fourth booke.

How many wayes conception may be letted,  
and how the causes may be knowen.

Capit. iiii.

**E**uery thyng then, the whiche doth encrease  
in this kynde, must fyrst be conceyued in the  
wombe and Matrix of the mother, which  
is apt & conuenient for the receypte of such seede.  
And (as I sayd before) as there may be defect and  
lacke in the mother, receiuing the seede, so may  
there be fault and defect in the sower, and in the  
seede it selfe also.

And in women there may be foure generall  
causes by the whiche the conception may be  
impedite and let: ouermuche caliditie or heate  
of the Matrix, ouermuche coldnesse, ouermuche  
humiditie or moystnesse, and ouermuch drynesse.  
Any of these foure qualities exceedyng tempe-  
rancie, may be sufficient causes to let due con-  
ception.

Wherfore the ryght excellent Philitian Hipo-  
crates in the fyfth booke of his Amphorismes  
sayth, All such women the which haue cold and  
dense Matrixes can not conceyue, and suche as  
haue moyst & watery the Matrixes can not con-  
ceyue, for the power of the seede is extinguisht  
in it: also hauing dry Matrixes, conceyue not,  
for the seede perissheth for lacke of due nutriment  
and foode: but that Matrix the whiche hath all  
these qualities in temperancie, that is fruitefull.  
This is Hipocrates saying, the whiche thyng  
also

## The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxij.

also may be well perceyued by a familer example of the sowynge of corne.

For yf it be so wen in ouercolde places, suche as be in the partes of a Countrey called Sitchia, and in certayne places of Almayne, or in suche places where a continuall Snowe, or froste, or where the Sunne doth not shyne, in these places the seede or grayne sowen, wyll neuer come to proosse, nor fructifise, but through the behemente coldnesse of the place in the whiche it is conceyued, the lyfe and quicknesse of the grayne is vttery destroyed and adnithilated.

And further, as concernyng ouermuch humyditie, yf ye sowe your grayne in a fen or maryshe and watery grounde, the seede wyll peryshe thorowe the ouermuch abundance of water, which extinguysheth the liuelynesse and the naturall power of the grayne and seede.

Likewyse yf it be sowen in such a countrey or place where is ouergreat heate, not tempered with water and rayne, or yf the yeere be so dry, that there come no rayne at all to alay the extream and seruent heate of the Sunne: then shall the seede sowen, wyther and dry a way, and the power of it be consumed and burnt.

And if it be sowen in dry places, where neuer cometh rayne, or on the sand and grauely places, in such a place the grayne can neuer take, ne proue, ne be conceiued in it, to come to any fruite or profite.

Wherefore, yf the Matrix be distempered, by  
the

## The fourth booke.

the excesse of any of these foure qualities, then must ye reduce it agayne to temperauncie, by such remedies as I shall shewe you hereafter. Likewise may there be defect and lacke in the man: as yf the seede be ouer hot, the which the woman shall feelee as it were burnyng hot, or to cold, the which she shall feelee as it were in manner colde as yse, or to thicke or thynne. &c. Diuers others wayes also it may be letted, whiche shall not neede here to be rehearsed.

Nowe yf the woman can not conceyue, the cause commyng of ouermuch frigiditie or coldnesse in the Matrix, that shall she know by these tokens. She shall feelee great colde about the Sydes, the reynes of the backe, and the Matrix; her brine shal appeare white and thinnishe, and sometymes also somewhat spisse and thicke, and all maner of colde thynges shall noy her, hotte thynges shall greatly comfort her.

But if it come by ouermuch humiditie of the Matrix, that shall she know by these signes. If the body of her be of a fat & grosse disposition, yf with her flowres issue forth at the begynnyng and the latter ende of them, certaine viscus and watery substaunce and that her brine be white, thicke, and sometime as it were mylke: Also that she feelee great cold and payne about the Matrix and priuite parties and much dolour in her sides, and in the reynes of her backe.

And when ouermuche heate or dryth in the Matrix is cause of the hynderaunce of conception, then is the brine hygh coloured, redde, or yellowe,



lowe, beyng thinne, with certayne moles appearing in the water : the woman hath great thyrst, and bytter rysing or belchynges out of the stomache into the mouth. And many tymes they that are in this case, are very spare and leane in all theyr body, hauiyng also but small quantitie of flowres, the whiche thyng may happen eyther by ouermuche watche, or ouermuche fastyng, labour, trauayle, sorowe, sickness, &c. But suche women whiche naturally are thus spare and leane, may very hardlye be brought to a temperance agayne, and be made apt to conceiue. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, to knowe whiche qualitie by his excellence causeth sterilitie. Now well we shew how it shalbe knowen, whether lacke of conception be in the woman, or els in the man, and how to know whether the woman be conceiued or no, accordyng to the mynde of ryght expert Physicians.

**T**holue to knowe whether lacke of conception be of the woman or of the man, and howe it may be perceyued whether she be conceiued or no.

Chap. iiii.

**Y**f ye be desyrous to knowe whether the man or the woman be hynderaunce in conception ; Let eche of them take of wheate

## The fourth booke.

wheate and Barly comes, and of Beanes, of eche. vii. the which they shall suffer to be steeped in their seuerall brine the space of twentie and foure houres: then take two pottes, such as they set Beliflowres in, fyll them with good earth, and in the one let be set the wheate, Barly, and Beanes, steeped in the mans water, and in the other the wheate, Barlye, and Beanes steeped in the womans water, and euery morning the space of. viii. or. x. dayes, let eche of them with theyr proper brine water the sayde seedes sower in the foresayd pottes: and marke whose potte doth proue, and the seedes therein conteyned doth grow, in that partie is not the lacke of conception, and see that there come no other water or rayne on the pottes: but trust not much this farre set experiment.

Item, accordyng to Hipocrates wytyng, yf ye wyll knowe whether the fault be in the woman or no, then let the woman receyue into her body vnderneath, beyng well and closely closed round about, the fume of some odoriferous perfume, as Laudanum, Storax calamite, Lignum Aloes, Muske, Ambre, and such other, and yf the odour and saueur of such thynges ascende thorow her body vp vnto her nose, ye shall vnderstande that sterilitie commeth not of the womans parte: yf not, then is the defect in her.

Item, yf she take Garlick, beyng pyllled out of the huskes, and conuay of it into the priue partes, and yf the sent of it ascende vpp the thorow the body vnto the nose, the woman is faultlesse,

## The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxiiij.

faulthe: yf not, then is there lacke in her. These tokens, althetigh they haue a certayne reason and appearaunce, yet be they not alwayes infallible, but onely lykely.

Whether she be conceived alreedy or no, ye shal knowe by these signes. First the flowres issue not in so great quantitie as they are wont, but waxe lesse and lesse, and in maner nothyng at all commeth from them. Also the brestes begin to waxe rounder, harder, and styffer then they were wont to be: the woman shall long after certayne thynges, otherwyle then she was bled to do before that tyme, also her bryne waxeth spyke and thychthe by retention of the superfluities. Also the woman feeleth her Matric very fastly and closely shutte, insomuche that as Hipocrates sayth, the poynt of a needle may scarce enter.

To knowe whether the woman be conceived, or no.

Item, to knowe whether she be conceived or no, accordyng to Hipocrates mynde, in the. v. of his Ampho. Geue vnto the woman when she is goyng to bedde, a quantitie of Millicratum to drynke, and p[er] after that drynke she feele great payne, gnauyng, and tumblyng in her belly, then be ye sure that she is conceived. This Millicratum is a drynke, made of one part wyne, another part water, sodden together, with a quantitie of honye.

But yf ye be desyrous to knowe whether the conception be man or woman, then let a droppe of her mylke or twayne be mylked on a smothe glasse, or a bryght knyfe, other els on the nape

of

## The fourth booke.

of one of her fyngers, and yf the mylke flewe and spread abroad vpon it by and by, then it is a woman chyld: but yf the drop of mylke continue and stande styl vpon that the which it is mylked on, then is it a signe of a man chyld.

Item, if it be a male, then shal the woman with chyld be well coloured, and lyght in goyng, her belly rounde, bigger towarde the right side, then the left (for commonly the man chyld lieth in the right syde, the woman in the left side) and in the time of her bearing she shal better digest & like her meate, her stomache not byng so queisie ne feble.

Of certayne remedies and medicines which may further the woman to conceyue. Cap. v.



A sterilitie then for the most part ensueth and commeth of the distemperauuncie of one of these foure forenamed qualities, wherefore the remedie and cure of the same when it chaunceth, must be done by suche thynges the which haue contrary power and operation to the excessive qualitie, for by that shal it be reduced to his temperauncie agayne.

As yf that colouesse and moystnesse exceeding temperauncie in the Matrice be occasion of sterilitie, then muste she applye suche thynges to that place the which be of nature hotte and drye, the which may calisie and warme the place, and also drye up the yll moystnes and humours contray

## The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxv.

ned in the same, hindering conception.

And for because that the most generall and common cause of sterilitie doth proceede of colde, wateryshe, and flegmatike humours, whiche bedeaupng the inner sydes and holownesse of the Matrir, with the porte and mouth thereof also, causeth that the seede sent from the man into the womans wombe or Matrir, can not there remayne ne cleaue: neyther is the mouth or port of the wombe apt or able to close it selfe sufficiently after reception of the seede, the flemmie and flmie humours withstanding it, the which vnlesse they be discusse, or dyled away, the seede alway slippeth and flyeth forth as fast as it entred in.

Wherfore to remedie and to do away the foresayd impediment, ye shall vse the meanes which foloweth.

First, within a day or two after the womans termes be passed, let her by the aduyce of some Physitian take a Purgation, whiche may purge flegme and waterishnesse, and then the next or the thyrde day after, let her lye in a Bath by almost to the Hauell, in the whiche Bath ye shall decoct and seeth these hearbes folowyng. Take of Bay leaues, Mallowes, redde Myntes, Wirtilles, Camomel, Maizian, Marygoldes, of eche an handfull, of Sage three handfulls, of Mercurie and Brankurin of each two handfulls, seeth all these hearbes together in fayre water, or (yf it were for a noble woman) in halfe water, and the other halfe redde wine,

wine,

The fourth booke.

nine, in this bath let her remaine the space of  
a good halfe houre, and a litle before that she  
come forth of the bath, geue her to drynke of  
this electuarie folowing.

Take of Spyke, Nutmegges, Cloues, Ga-  
lingall, Cinamome, and long Pepper, of eche  
the waight of a grote, of Annis feede the  
waight of two grotes, of Sage leaues dyled,  
the waight of three grotes, all these thynges  
(eche by them selues) beater to small powder,  
temper them altogether in so much pure clari-  
fied Honye, as may be sufficient to receyue all  
the powder, other els commixt with this pow-  
der so muche fyne Sugar, as the waight of the  
powder amounteth vnto, whereof ye shall geue  
vnto her at once the waight of two grotes,  
with, dist. ix. oz. x. Sponefulls of good whyte oz.  
Claret wine, other els with good Maluesey oz.  
Muscadell.

And all this must be done eyther fastyng in the mornyng one houre before breakfast, or dinner, other els. v. or. vi. houres after dynner, so that it be not done vppon a full stomache. But yf ye take the bath and the electuarium in the mornyng, then at nyght thre or foure houres after supper, let her receyue vnderneath her clothes the vapoure of these thynges folowynge into the practise. Take of Lavender dried, of vnset Tyme, Bay berries, Junie leaves, of eche halfe a lytle handfull, of whyte frankensence the waight of foure grotes, of Sage dried, or other, two lytle handfulls of Rosemarie leaues

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvi.

leaves one handfull, seeth these together in fayre water, and when they be perfectly sodden, then let the woman set her selfe ouer the vapour thereof, sitting grouelyng. other els set on a couer made for the nonce with a tunnell or conductite, thozowe the which the vapour may be directed into the womans priue passage, the neere thereby, that the vertue thereof may approche vnto the wombe or wombe port.

¶ He may also in the same water dyppe wooll, or els fyne linnen cloutes, and so conuay it into the priue passage, there to remaine the space of one or two houres. This bath, electuarie, and vapour, I counsell them that haue neede, to vse them the space of thre dayes continually, and then, the thyrde night to company with her husbnde, and by the grace of G O D she shalbe spedde. There be sometymes, that with the vse of the bath onely, or the electuarie alone, eyther the vapour, without any farther remedie, haue been aptified to conception, but who that vseth it as is aboue mentioned, woorketh the surer way.

These shalbe sufficient remedies for want of conception, proceeding of colde, moyste, and flegmaticke humidities. Nowe yf it come by any distemperancie in heate and dryeth: then let her be purged of colley, or other vnkynnd heate bred in the body, by thynges apt and meete for that purpose, and then afterward to vse bathes, electuaries, and vapours, of moderately cooling thynges, as of Roses, violetttes, Lettuce, purs-



## The fourth booke.

layne, plantayne, and diuers other. But forasmuche that most commonly the aptitude of conception (in women hauiing these healeth) springeth of the superfluitie of colde and moist humours (whereof we haue alreedy spoken) therefore all other impedimentes leste as part, ye shall holde ye content with this for this tyme. For if I woulde make mention of all the occasions whereby conception may be let or impedit, then shoulde I here alleage and bring in all the diseases that may happen to a woman in that partes, with the remedies thereof, whiche were a long wooper, and not proper for this volume.

In this. li. Chapter is entreated of dyuers bellifying receptes, as yemay hereafter reade.

**O**F embellyshing or bellifying medicines wherof I entende to speake here, be not to be understood to be of that sort, whereby any Adustious or outwarde forraigne beaultie or set colours shoulde be acquired or gotten. The whiche farre set & damnable curiositie, I doubt not but that all honest and vertuous sadde women doo bitterly abhorre and contemne: but here mine only meaning is, to shewe how to remove certayne blemishes, and as it were weeds of the body, through the whiche many tymes the naturall beaultie thereof is obscured and defaced: For as in a foyre Garden, be it neuer so beautifull,

## The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvli.

beautiful, yet yf it be not regarded and looked vnto, the weedes enternynghing them selues among the good hearbes, wyll defourme and emperyshe the good grace of them. For in the earth, be it neuer so well diligent and pyched, yet alwayes therein wyll remayne some sparhes and seedes of vntlooked for weedes; the whiche euer when tyme or season serueth, Nature thru- steth forth.

Lyke wyse in the body of man, among the good and necessary humours, is some sparke or qualite of yll and not necessary humours, with the whiche nature beyng offended and cloyed, expelleth and dryueth them forth sometymes into one place, and sometymes into another, ac- cording to the aptitude or feeblenesse in resi- stance of the place receyving it, and the force or violence of nature (there with greued) sendyng it, so that the superfluities founde in the hyper part and face or superficie of the skynne, enstret by the superfluitie and dominion of lyke mat- ter coneyned and commixed in the baynes a- mong the blood, and is a great euidence and testimonie thereof. But here I wyll not speake of all kyndes of vtter diseases spryngyng of this inward corrupted humours, but onely of suche thynges as commonly chaunce to men and women without any imperishment of their health.

As for example, first I wyll briefly declare the fyltynesse of the head, called in Latin Perrigo,

C. ii.

in

## The fourth booke.

in English the Dandriffe of the head, the which is, when that in kembing and scratchyng of the head, certayne whyte scales, as it were Branne, falleth of from the head, and lyeth very thicke among and vnder the heare.

### Of the causes and remedies of Dandriffe of the head.

**T**he cause of this Dandriffe commeth by abundance of flegmaticke humours, commyrt with the blood, the whiche dayly and hourely by incessable sweatyng, evaporateth and issueth forth of the pores, in the skynne that couereth the panbone, and as fast as it issueth forth, dryeth on the vtter superficie of the skynne, and there remaynyng and geatheryng together, becommeth euery day more and more, therto greatly helping the Forrest of heare which couereth, harboureth, and retayneth such superfluities, more in those places then in any other where no heare groweth. And most commonly they that haue blacke heare haue more store of Dandriffe then other. This humour suffered ouerlong to raigne on the head, destroyeth and corrupteth the rootes of the heares, making them to fall of in great plentie, and specially in kembryng. And although this superfluitie be not cleanly, yet notwithstanding it shalbe no wysdome for me to teache, ne any other here, withenambred to learne, howe to stoppe it, for feare of further inconueniencies, but onely I counsell you once in tenne dayes at the least, to washe

## The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxviii.

washe and scoure the head cleane with good lye, wherein let be steeped in a linnen bagge of Annis seede, Commin, dyed Rosemarye, fenegreke, and the ryndes of Pomegranate, of eche lyke muche: & beware that after the washyng of your head ye take no colde, before the head be perfectly dyed.

And whereas some say, that they which be ofte washyng of theyr heades, shalbe very prone to head ache: that is not true, but only in such that after they haue been washed, roll vp theyr heare (being yet wette) about theyr heades, the colde whereof is daingerous to bying them to Catarrhes and pokes, with other inconueniencies. Wherefore all diligence muste be had, that the head may be exactly well dyed with warme clothes, whylest the head is yet hotte of the washyng, and then neuer feare no inconueniencies, but rather conuenience and comoditie: and let this be done also fastyng in the mornyng, or els one houre before supper, or .v. houres after supper. This ofte washyng shall purghe the skynne of the head, and stedfaste the heare from falling, leuate and lyghten the head, with all the senses therein conteyned, and greatlye comfort the braynes.

To take away heares from places where  
it is vnseemly.

**I**tem, sometymes heare groweth in places vnseemly, and out of order: as in many maydens and women the heare groweth so lowe

## The fourth booke.

in the foreheades and the temples, that it diffireth them. for this ye may vse three wayes to remoue them: eyther to plucke bp one after another with pincers, such as many women haue for the nonce, eyther els with this lye folowynge.

Take newe burnt Lime foure ounces, of Arsenicke an ounce, sleepe both these in a pynt of water the space of two dayes, and then boyle it from a pynt to the halfe.

And to proue whether it be perfect, dyppe a feather therein, and yf the plume of the feather departe of easily, then it is strong enough: with this water then annoynt so farre the place that ye woulde haue bare from heare, as it lyeth yf you, and within a quarter of an houre plucke at the heares, and they wyll folowe, and then washe that place muche with water wherein branne hath ben steeped: and that done, annoynt the place with the whyte of a newe layde egge and oyle Olyue, beaten and mixt togeather with the iuyce of Singrene or Purslane, to alaye the heate engendred of the foresayde lye. The thyrde way to remoue heare, is with a plaster made of very dye pitche. and bypon leather applyed to the place, the heares beyng fyrst shauen, or cutte as neare as can be with a payre of Cyfers.

Nowe when the heares be bp by the rootes, then to let them that they growe no more: take of Alome the wayght of a groate, and dissolue it in two spoonefulls of the iuyce of Nychtshade, or of Benbane, and therewithall annoynt the place

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxix.

place two or three tymes euery day, the space of  
ix. or .x. dayes, and heare wyll growe no more in  
that place.

To do away freckens, or other spottes  
in the face.

**T**Hese freckens, and such other spottes in the  
face, or other where in the bodye, may be  
taken away by often annoynting them  
with the oyle of Carter, to be founde alwayes at  
the Apothecaries, and suerly that oyle is soue-  
rayne for that purpose.

Item, take Eleborus, and seeth of it an ounce  
in halfe a pint of strong whyte wineger, tyl halfe  
be consumed, the mixt therewith Hony. iii. spon-  
fulles, and the weight of a peny of Mercury sub-  
limid (to be had at the Apothecaries) & seeth these  
together agayne tyl it become thicke: with this  
annoynt the freckens, and it wyll destroy them.  
This is also very good for the Morphewe, and  
other discolouration or staynyng of the skinne.

To destroy wartes, and suche lyke excres-  
cences on the face or els where.

**F**OR this purpose nothing is so excellent,  
as euery day once, the space of three or foure  
dayes, to drop one drop of strong water, cal-  
led Aqua fortis, on them, for this destroyeth them  
in very short tyme.

Item, the iuyce of a red Onion, and the iuyce  
of Marygoldes, is very good for the same.

Item, dissolue a lytle Mercury sublimed in  
fayre water, and therewith drop the wartes, and  
they

## The fourth booke.

they wyll soone wyther and consume away.

To cleare and clarifie the skin in the handes,  
face, or other part of the body.

**F**or this there is nothing better then to take  
one spoonefull of the oyle of Carter, and fyve  
spoonesfulls of water, with these commixed  
together, washe the handes, face, and other par-  
tes, for it scoureth, cleanseth, and purifieth the  
skynne soueraignely, and wil suffer no filthynesse  
to remaine in the pores of the flesh: and this oyle  
of Carter is made vnto this wise.

Take some lyes dyed, the whiche the Golde-  
smithes do call Arguyl, and beate it into pow-  
der, and then sell thereof a Goldsmithes crudi-  
ble, and set it among hotte coles, tyll the Ar-  
guyl begynne to waxe blacke: then take it out of  
the fyre, and let it coole, and bynde it in a linnen  
cloute, and hang it a lytle ouer the vapour of  
hotte boyleng water: that done, hang this clout  
with the Arguyl in a glasse with a brode mouth,  
so that the bagge or clout touch not the bottome  
of the glasse, and the water or oyle called Carter  
will drop downe a lytle and lytle: and the sooner,  
yf it stande in a very colde and moyst cellar.

Item, to scoure the handes and the body, some  
use to washe theyr handes with the powder of  
Beene, whiche is the roote of the blew floure.  
deluce it with some with Beane flower.

Item, the yolke and whyte of egges is good  
for that purpose, and so is hony.

To



**C**o souple and mollifie the ruggednesse  
of the skynne.

**A**nnoynt the skynne with the oyle of sweete  
Almondes, the same is very good also for  
chippinges of the lippes or handes.

**I**tem, Deere suet is very proper for the same  
purpose, especially being well washed and tem-  
pered with Rose water, wherein hath been dis-  
solved two or three graynes of pure Muske.

**A**gainst todayne ryling of pimples through  
unkind heate in the face, or els where.

**T**ake the whyte of an egge, and beate it well  
with a spoone, & then therewith commix  
two spoonefulls of Salet oyle, one spoone-  
ful of Rose water, another of the iuyce of Sorel,  
and halfe a litle spoonefull of vineger, here with  
annoynt the pimples and rylinges.

**C**o keepe and preserve the teeth cleane.

**F**irst if they be very yelow and filthie, or blacke,  
hythe, let a Barber scoure, rubbe, and pyche  
them cleane and whyte, then after to main-  
teyne them cleane, it shalbe very good to rubbe  
them euery day with the roote of a Mallowe,  
and to picke them cleane that no meate remaine  
and putrisie betweene the teeth.

**I**tem, take of the small whyte pybble stones  
which be founde by the water sydes, and beate  
them in very smal powder, hereof take an ounce,  
and of Masticke one dram, myngle them toge-  
ther,

## 313. The fourth booke.

ther, and with this powder once in. xiij. dayes  
rubbracke your teeth, and this shall keepe your  
teeth fayre and white: but be wae ye touch not,  
ne bere the gummies there with ball.

Item, to stable and stedfast the teeth, and to  
keepe the gummies in good case, it shalbe very  
good every day in the morning, to walthe well  
the mouth with red wine.

Of styngyng breath.

**S**tingyng of the breath commeth either by occa-  
sion bred in the mouth, or els in the stomack.

If it come from the stomack, then the body  
must be purged by the further aduice of a phis-  
tician. If it be engendred in the mouth only, then  
most commonly it commeth of some rotten and  
corrupted holome teeth, which in this case must  
be plucked out, and the gummies well scoured  
and washed with vineger wherein hath been  
sodden Cloues and Nutmegges. The cleanly  
keepyng of the teeth doth conferre muche to the  
sauernesse of the mouth.

Of the ranche sauour of the armeholes.

**T**his vice in many persons is very tedious  
and lothsome; the remedie whereof is, to  
purge first the cholerike and egre hu-  
mours, originall causers of the same, and after-  
warde to wash the armeholes oftentymes with  
the water wherein yewewood hath ben sod-  
den togeather with Camomel, and a litle quan-  
tity of Alooe.

Item,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxxi.

Item, Authours doo wryte, that the rootes  
of Artichaughes (the pyth pyked out) sodden in  
whyte wine & so drunke, doth cause the stench  
of the armeholes, and other partes of the body  
by the brine. For (as Galen also dooth testifie)  
he prouoketh copie and plentie of synkyng and  
vnsauery brine from all partes of the body,  
the whiche propertie it hath by speciall  
gyft, and not only by his hot qualitie.

And thus here I make an ende  
of this fourth and  
last booke.

FINIS.

